THE EFFECTS OF HYPOFERREMIA ON A MURINE LYMPHOMA

· AND

A COMPARISON WITH NEISSERIA MENINGITIDIS

Ъу

Margaret Caldwell

A thesis submitted to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

Department of Microbiology and Immunology McGill University Montreal, Quebec, Canada

C Margaret Caldwell July 1987

K,

Ph.D.

Margaret Caldwell

Microbiology and l Immunology

THE EFFECTS OF HYPOFERREMIA ON A MURINE LYMPHOMA

ABSTRACT

AND

A COMPARISON WITH NEISSERIA MENINGITIDIS

Both neoplastic and Neisseria meningitidis cells can obtain iron from transferrin in vivo. Previous findings (Holbein, 1980) showed that the murine hypoferremic response inhibits Neisseria meningitidis infection by iron deprivation. The present studies demonstrated that hypoferremia does not limit_Fe acquisition by or growth of murine lymphoma cells. Transferrin binding sites on lymphoma cells and N. meningitidis were enumerated and the transferrin binding affinities were determined. Iron deprivation increased the number of transferrin binding sites on N. meningitidis cells. N° . subflava and Escherichia coli were unable to bind transferrin. Competition binding studies demonstrated that lymphoma cells bound human transferrin over murine and bovine transferrin, conalbumin, and lactoferrin and suggested that neisserial transferrin binding sites had lower specificity. Further competition studies indicated that lymphoma transferrin binding sites had higher affinity for ferri-transferrin than for apo-transferrin while neisserial sites bound these two ligands to the same extent. This can explain why hypoferremia inhibits iron acquisition by N. meningitidis but not by lymphoma cells.

Margaret Caldwell

RESUME

Microbiologie et

Immunologie

EFFETS DE LA REPONSE HYPOFERREMIQUE SUR LES CELLULES LYMPHOIDES DE SOURIS ET UNE COMPARAISON AVEC NEISSERIA MENINGITIDIS

Les cellules tumorales et Neisseria meningitidis peuvent obtenir du Les découvertes antérieures (Holbein, fer de la transferrine in vivo. 1980) démontraient que la réponse hypoferrémique chez les souris freinait l'infection de Neisseria meningitidis en limitant l'accessibilité au fer. démontrait que la réponse hypoferrémique ne restreint ni Cette étude l'acquisition du fer ni la croissance des cellules lymphoides de souris. Le nombre de récepteurs spécifiques à la transferrine sur la surface des cellules lymphoides et sur N. meningitidis a été mesuré et les K_d 's pour l'association de la transferrine avec ses récepteurs ont été déterminés. La carence en fer augmentait le nombre des récepteurs spécifiques à la transferrine des cellules N. meningitidis. Aucun site d'attachement à la transferrine ne fut trouvé chez N. subflava et Escherichia coli. Les études competitives d'attachement démontraient que les cellules lymphoides attachaient mieux à la transferrine humaine qu'à la transferrine bovine ou souris ou à la lactoferrine ou à la conalbumine. Les résultats sugde géraient aussi que les récepteurs spécifiques à la transferrine de N. meningitidis avaient une specificité plus basse que les récepteurs des cellules tumorales. Les récepteurs spécifiques à la transferrine des cellules

Ph.D.

ii

lymphoides avaient une affinité plus forte pour la ferritransferrine que pour l'apotransferrine alors que lés récepteurs de N. meningitidis ne pouvaient différencier ces deux ligands. Ce résultat peut expliquer pourquoi la réponse hypoferrémique inhibe l'acquisition du fer chez N. meningitidis mais non chez les cellules lymphoides.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The author wishes to thank her supervisor, Dr. Fred Archibald, for his advice, encouragement and interest throughout the course of this project and during the preparation of this manuscript. I would like to thank Mrs. Jane Donga for her excellent technical assistance, for her help in preparing the graphs for this manuscript and most of all for her friendship. I am grateful to Dr. Malcolm Baines for giving me the P815 and YAC-1 cell lines and to Pardo Pannunzio for performing the Western blotting. Anna Campana is sincerely thanked for her expert photographic work and I would like to thank Pierre Martin for his assistance in translating the abstract. Finally, I would like to thank my husband, Bill, for his constant support and encouragement.

Financial support was received from McGill University as a David Stewart Memorial Fellowship and from F.C.A.C., fonds F.C.A.C. pour l'aide et le soutien à la recherche and is gratefully acknowledged.

iv

CLAIM OF CONTRIBUTION TO KNOWLEDGE

1. It was demonstrated using the EL4 murine lymphoma, a tumor of C57 black mice, that the hypoferremic response was not beneficial in inhibiting tumor cell proliferation or iron acquisition.

2. The EL4-1 lymphoma cell subline which could grow in vitro" without serum in synthetic tissue culture media and human transferrin was established.

3. A model of hypoferremia induced by turpentine inflammation was established in C57 black mice.

4. It was demonstrated that the EL4-1 cells could utilize the following iron.sources for growth: human, bovine and murine transferrins, hemoglobin, ferritin and inorganic iron. Lactoferrin and conalbumin could not be used. The number of surface transferrin binding sites for these cells was determined as was the transferrin-transferrin receptor dissociation constant (K_d) . It was found that these murine cells bind human transferrin preferentially over murine transferrin and the transferrin receptors of these cells have very low affinity for bovine transferrin, lactoferrin or conalbumin.

5. High affinity binding sites for human transferrin on Neisseria meningitidis cells were enumerated by Scatchard analysis and the dissociation constant (Kg) was also determined. 6. Iron deprivation of *Neisseria meningitidis* causes enhanced binding of human transferrin to the cells. No difference was observed in the $K_d's$ between iron-sufficient and iron-deprived cells.

7. Unlike Neisseria meningitidis, the non-pathogens Neisseria subflava and Escherichia coli do not possess surface cellular binding sites for human transferrin.

"TABLE OF GONTENTS

•			° Page
•			,
	ABSTRACT		1.
	RESUME		11
	ACKNOWL	CDGEMENTS	iv
	CLAIM OI	CONTRIBUTION TO KNOWLEDGE	° 🔹 v
	LIST OF	TABLES -	xii
,	LIST OF	FIGURES	xv
~	1 INTE	ODUCTION .	1 '
	`` 2 ITTE	PATTIDE DEVITED	رز ۲
9	2.1	Neoplasia	·
	2.2	Neisseria meningitidis	5
	2.3	Importance of Fe in biological systems	9
	2.4	The role of Fe in metabolism	10 🐚
		2.4.1 The vertebrate Fe cycle	10
		2.4.2 The transferrins	13
		2.4.2.1 Transferrin	13
		2.4.2.2 Conalbumin	16
		2.4.2.3 Lactoferrin	17
	ر	2.4.3 Ferritin and metabolic Fe storage	· 19
0		2.4.4 Ceruloplasmin	21
	2.5	Changes in Fe metabolism during infection .	22
	2.6	Changes in Fe metabolism during neoplastic disease	26
-	2.7	Fe and carcinogenesis	.31
	2.8	Fe and in vitro animal cell culture	33

2			,			
ú	r.	•				
C		•			-	Page
ب ت	· 290	Cellular Ferance	vicition	· ·	•	· •
	2.7	-	(.	A		24
		2,9.1 Microbia		v	٠	34
	2	2.9.2 Eucaryot:	ic cells and transfe	errin receptors	-	38
Gy J	۰.	2.9.2.1 2.9.2.2 2.9.2.3 2.9.2.4	Properties of trans Occurrence of trans The intracellular t Regulation of trans expression	sferrin receptors ferrin receptors ransferrin cycle ferrin receptor		38 41 45
	2 10	Si	expression	* ९		40 -
•	2.10	Summary_	_			51 ,
	°3, MATERI	IALS AND METHOD	S		4. * .*	53
	3.1 M	lice				_, 53
	• 3.2 T	Cumor cells	مر . م			53 ,
	- 3.3 I	<i>n vivo</i> experime	ents °	. •		54
	3.	.3.1 Measuring	the hypoferremic r	esponse +	۴,	54
- 1	* • 3. • •	.3.2 Assessmen administr	t of the effect of a cation on tumor cell	transferrin Fe growth	•	¥ 56
Į	3. '	.3.3 Assessmen tumor cel	t of the effect of a l growth	desferrioxamine on		56 °
\	¥ 3.	.3.4 Assessment hypoferre	t of the effect of i miagon tumor cell gr	inflammation-induced	I	57
\bigcirc	3.4 In	n vitro growth	experiments		4	58
	3.	4.1 Cell cultu	are preparation		. /	58
	. 3.	4.2 Fe uptake	by tumor cells	~		59
	3.	4.3 Transferri	in binding experimen	its		59 ⁻
	-	3.4.3.1 I 3.4.3.2 7 3.4.3.3 6	Determination of rec Fime course binding Competitive binding	eptor numbers and uptake assays assays	0 • •	60 61 62
3	3.5 Pr	eparation of tr	ransferrin solutions	۱. ۱		62
₽ ► -	3.5	5.1 Preparatio unlabelled	n of 50% and 100% F I proteins	e-saturated	Ð	62

`

5

viii

....

			-		
		3.5.2	Preparation of 59 Fe-radiolabelled transferrin		63
	- 7	3.5.3	Preparation of ¹²⁵ I-radiolabelled transferrin		63
		3.5.4	Deglycosylation of transferrin		65
	3.6	Prepar	ation of bovine hemoglobin and ferritin	•	65 🖕
,	3.7	Detect	ion of transferrin on EL4 cells 。	•	66
	· 3.8	Charac	terization of cells -	•	67
	-	3.8.1	Determination of cellular Fe	(67
	•	3.8.2	Respiration studies	1	67
		3.8.3	Glucose and lactic acid assays	5	° 68
		3.8.4	API ZYM enzyme assays		69
	3.9	Sodium electr	dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel ophoresis (SDS-PAGE)		69
	3.10	Bacter	ial studies		70
	4	3.10.1	Bacterial cultures		70
	, –	3.10.2	Culture conditions		71
		3.10.3	Binding assays		-71
\$	•	3.10.4	Plate assays		73
			ان (۲۰		ŀ
	4: RES	ULTS AN	ID DISCUSSION		74
	4.1	In viv	o experiments	÷	74.
		4.1.1	Measuring the hypoferremic résponse		74
	٥	4.1.2	The effect of transferrin Fe administration on tumor cell growth		86
		4.1.3	The effect of desferrioxamine on tumor cell gro	wth	* 89 🔥
		4.1.4	The effect of inflammation-induced hypoferremia tumor cell growth	on	[*] [*] 93

Page

7

J

7

/。

ix

	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Page
- 4.2	In vitro growth experiments	- , 99
. •	4.2.1 The effect of transferrin Fe saturation on in vitro growth of EL4-1 cells	99
{	4.2.2 Growth of EL4-1 cells on non-transferrin Fe sources	105
, ,	4.2.3 Determination of cellular Fe, respiration rate, cellular heme, lactic acid production and enzyme profiles of the lymphoma cells	
	4.2.4 Growth of EL4-1 cells on various transferrins	° 112
•	4.2.5 Uptake of ⁵⁹ Fe from 50% Fe-saturated human transferrin by EL4-1 cells and the effect of the hypoferremic response	- 119
4.3	Transferrin binding studies	- 126
	4.3.1 Enumeration of surface transferrin binding sites on EL4-1 cells	126
	4.3.2 Time course binding and uptake studies	130
	4.3.3 Competitive binding assays	132
	4 3.4 The effect of deglycosylation of transferrin on binding	140
4.4	Binding of transferrin to Neisseria meningitidis	148
	4.4.1 Rationale for binding studies	148
	4.4.2 Plate assays	149
-	4.4.3 Enumeration of <i>Neisseria meningitidis</i> transferrin binding sites	. 154
ł	4.4.4 Time course binding	164 '
	4.4.5 Competitive binding assays	164
5. GENI	RAL DISCUSSION, SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS	
5.1	Introduction	169
5.2	Initial studies	170

C

							-
	5.3	A comparison meningitidis	between the EL4 systems	tumor and Ne	isseria		172
	5.4	A'discussion future resear	of the EL4 work ch	and implicat	ioną for	•	175°
	5,5	A discussion implications	of <i>Neisseria men</i> for future resea	<i>ingitidis</i> wo rch	rk and		183
~	5.6	Summary and c	conclusions		• , t • •	•	190
6.	REFI	FRENCES					192
	APPE	NDIX I	Becton Dickinso	n ⁵⁹ Fe Radio	assay Kit	D	
	APPI	ENDIX II	The API ZYM Sys	stem 🧳			
	ΔΡΡΓ		List of Abbrevi	ations			• •

j

, xi

^

1₅₁

-0

Page

٩.

٩.

c 0

LIST OF TABLES

C

Ø

አ

	le	Pag
		-
1	Forum Followello in normal control mice	. 7
1.	Serum re revers in normal concroi mice.	,
2.	A comparison of whole body and liver weights of normal control	
	and tumor-bearing mice over a 20-day experimental period.	8
3.	A comparison of the spleen and thymus weights of tumor-bearing	
	and normal control mice.	8
	6	,
; .	Same To recoonse in control and deeferrievening, treated miles	د
4.	Serum re response in concroi and desterritoxamine-created mice.	-
5.	Cellular Fe; O ₂ consumption and heme Fe of EL4 cells.	11
		1
<u>د</u> .	Frame profiles of Fernufficient and Terderrived FIA-1 colls	, 11
••••	Mizyme profilies of re-sufficient and re-deprived ELA-1 cells.	T T
7.	A comparison of cell lines with respect to the number of	
	transferrin binding sites per cell and transferrin binding	
	offinity D	10
	arring y	. 12
8.	Effect of competition with unlabelled human, murine or	
`-	bovine transferrin, lactoferrin and conalbumin on the	
	$D_1 D_2 D_3 D_4 D_5 = D_2 D_5 D_5 D_5 D_5 D_5 D_5 D_5 D_5 D_5 D_5$	14
-		13.

xii

.

. Effect of human, murine and bovine transferrin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin to the original EL4 cells.

Page

135

136

138

144

146

152

158

- 10. Effect of human and murine transferrin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin to EL4-1 cells cultured with human or murine transferrin as their Fe source.
- 11. Effect of unlabelled human and murine transferrin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin to EL4-1, P815, YAC-1 and normal murine bone marrow cells.

12A. Effect of native human and deglycosylated human transferrin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin to EL4-1 cells.

12B.Effect of native murine and deglycosylated murine transferrin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin to ELA-1 cells.

13. Nutritional availability of Fe bound to various transferrin
proteins to N. meningitidis and N. subflava.

14. Binding of human transferrin to Fe-sufficient and Fe-deprived

N. meningitidis.

Table

16. Effect of human transferrin, lactoferrin and conalbumin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin to N. meningitidis grown under Fe-sufficient and Fe-deprived conditions. Page

161

LIST OF FIGURES

-	Fi	gure ·	Page
	1	The vertebrate Fe cycle	12
•		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	· • • •
u:		• • • • • • • • •	,
	2.	Photomicrographs of murine lymphoma cells.	(75
	З.	Growth of EL4 cells in C57 mice.	76
		4	
		Changes in Formatcheling during FIA analysis burger another in	•
	4.	changes in re metabolism during EL4 ascites tumor growth in	
		mice.	77
			• ,
- ',	5.	Cp levels in tumor-bearing mice.	85
	•		-
	6.	The effect of added exogenous transferrin Fe on EL4 tumor	•
			0.0
~	•	cell growth in mice.	. 88
-	۲		• •
,	7.	The effect of desferrioxamine injections on the in vivo	7
		growth of EL4 cells.	- 90
		·	-
	٥	The hypeforyante reasons during turnenting induced	
	°.	The hypoteffemic response during curpentine-induced	
		inflammation in mice.	94
,		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	5
	9.	Changes in Fe metabolism due to turpentine-induced	•
a		inflammation and EL4 tumor cell growth in mice.	95
			• •

xv

Figure

10. The influence of turpentine inflammation-induced hypoferremia on the growth of EL4 tumor cells in mice. 96 11. The effect of desferrioximine on the in vitro growth of EL4 cells. 100 12. Growth of EL4-1 cells in vitro on human transferrin. 101 ~13. Growth of EL4-1 lymphoma cells on serum-free RPMI 1640 with A. . 75 nM human transferrin at 100%, >50% and 10% saturation. 103 14. Growth of EL4-1 lymphoma cells on serum-free RPMI with 0.625 uM or 37.5 uM human transferrin at various saturation levels. 104 15. Growth of EL4-1 cells on physiological transferrin levels and bovine hemoglobin. 106 16. Growth of EL4-1 cells on various Fe complexes. 107 17. A comparison of growth of EL4-1 cells on human and murine transferrin. 115 18. A comparison of growth of EL4-1 cells on human and bovine transferrin. 116

Page 7

**

Fig	ure	Pa
、 19.	Growth of EL4-1 cells on conalbumin and lactoferrin.	1
20 [.] .	Evaluation of Fe uptake from transferrin under various •	1
	conditions.	1
21.	The effect of increasing the concentration of apo-	
	transferrin (raising the UIBC) on the Feruptake rate	
•	by EL4-1 cells.	1
		a
22.	Binding of 50% saturated ⁵⁹ Fe-labelled human transferrin	,
	to EL4-1 cells in the presence of unlabelled 50% saturated	
	transferrin or apotransferrin.	1
	- -	
23.	Binding of radiolabelled diferric human transferrin to	
	EL4-1 cells at 4 [°] C as a function of medium transferrin	
	concentration.	1
	· · · ·	•
24.	Time course of transferrin binding by EL4-1 cells.	· 1
25A	A comparison of native and deglycosylated human transferrin	
	by sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis.	1
25 B	. A comparison of native and deglycosylated human and murine	

4

, xvii

100 C

Figure

26A.Photographs of plate assays demonstrating the nutritional availability of Fe from various transferrins for N. meningitidis. Page

150

151

. 156

159

165

176

26B. Photographs of plate assays demonstrating the nutritional availability of Fe from various transferrins for N.
subflava.

- 27. A Scatchard plot of binding of radiolabelled human
 diferric transferrin to N. meningitidis cells at 4^o C.
 155
- 28. Binding of radiolabelled diferric human transferrin to N. meningitidis cells at 4^o C as a function of available transferrin concentration.
- 29. Scatchard plots of binding data for Fe-sufficient andFe-deprived N. meningitidis cells.
- 30. Time course binding of diferric human transferrin to N. meningitidis cells at 4° C.
- 31. A comparison of the time course of binding of diferric human transferrin to EL4-1 and N. meningitidis cells.

1. Introduction

All procaryotic cells except certain lactic acid bacteria and all normal and malignant eucaryotic cells examined require iron (Fe) as a nutrient for growth. Therefore in order for a pathogen to establish an infection or for tumor cells to proliferate sufficient Fe must be obtained from the The primary Fe source in vivo is the serum Fe transport protein host. transferrin (Tf). During inflammation, infection or neoplastic disease the amount of Fe carried by this protein decreases. This process, known as the hypoferremic response, has been shown repeatedly to be effective in controlling infection by limiting Fe availability to infecting microorganisms. A series of studies by Holbein (1980, 1981) and Letendre and Holbein (1983, 1984) demonstrated that hypoferremia is important in controlling Neisseria meningitadis infection in mice. This bacterial pathogen is unusual as it can obtain host Fe by binding Tf directly. Weinberg, in a series of rewiews, (1981, 1983, 1984, 1986) has pointed out that since proliferating tumor cells require a continuous supply of Fe (which nondividing cells do not) and since they also obtain Fe chiefly or solely by binding Tf directly, the hypoferremic response might well inhibit fumor cell growth by Fe deprivation. The primary purposes of this work were to use a murine model of neoplastic disease to investigate whether the hypoferremic response could effectively deprive tumor cells of Fe and limit their growth and to compare the characteristics of procaryotic and eucaryotic Tf binding. Subsequently, several other facets of tumor cell and neisserial Fe acquisition were examined.

As background for this work, neoplastic and meningococcal disease as

well as certain aspects of Fe metabolism will be reviewed. These aspects will include a description of vertebrate Fe metabolism, the proteins involved in Fe metabolism and a discussion of the changes which occur in this cycle during infection and neoplasia. The possible role of Fe in contributing to neoplastic disease will be mentioned and microbial Fe acquisition will be discussed. Finally, the mechanism of tumor cell Fe acquisition will be reviewed in terms of the information currently available concerning the eucaryotic Tf receptor, its cellular expression and the endocytic Fe acquisition cycle.

٦Y

2.1 Neoplasia

The word neoplasm means new growth and cancer is a general term used for all malignant tumors. A malignant neoplasm is an abnormal mass of, tissue whose growth rate often exceeds that of normal tissue. Malignant neoplastic cells do not respond to normal host signals to regulate or halt division (Maugh and Marx, 1975). Neoplastic cells may arise in any tissue containing cells capable of division but occur most frequently in tissues typified by active cell loss and replacement and in tissues exposed to environmental carcinogens such as the skin, the respiratory tract and alimentary tract. Cancer cells are more variable in size and shape than normal cells and the nucleus is generally larger and often irregular There is often an increase in the size and number of nucleoli and there is generally a large proportion of the cells undergoing mitosis at any one time. Neoplastic cells are also generally less well-differentiated than the originalnormal tissue (Ruddon, 1981).

LITERATURE REVIEW

The hallmarks of neoplastic disease are invasion and metastasis. Malignant cells invade and destroy the surrounding normal tissue disrupting tissue function. These cells further metastasize via blood vessels and lymphatic channels to distant organs. These properties of malignant tumors have devastating effects on the host including: bleeding or hemorrhage, infection, fever, anorexia, cachexia or body-wasting, anemia and pain due to tissue destruction, pressure or obstruction of organ function (Ruddon, 1981).

Generally, tumors in vivo grow slowly initially when they are avasrular but subsequent vascularization may occur due to production of tumor angiogenesis factor. Once vascularization occurs, tumors have access to more nutrients and oxygen and therefore grow more quickly.

Transformed cells in vitro have many cytological characteristics similar to those described above for cancer cells in vivo. Normal diploid mammalian cells have a finite life span in vitro while malignant cell cultures are able to live indefinitely. Neoplastic cells in vitro grow to a higher cell density than non-transformed cells; they no longer demonstrate contact inhibition or anchorage dependence and can grow in-suspension or soft agar. Transformed cells also demonstrate loss of restriction point control. Certain tumor cells can synthesize some of their own growth factors and therefore may require a lower serum concentration. Many cellular properties might be changed including: surface glycoproteins and glycolipids; tumor-associated antigens may be present and the cell cytoskeleton, microtubules and microfilaments, may be altered. Changes in cell enzyme patterns, cyclic nucleotide levels and in amino acid and segar transport may be evident. Finally, malignant cells demonstrate tumorigenicity when injected into experimental animals (Ruddon, 1981).

2.2 - Neisseria meningitidis

Neisseria meningitidis, the causative agent of meningococcal meningitis, is a gram-negative, non-motile diplococcus. The individual cocci are small (0.8 X 0.6 um) and are kidney-shaped. This bacterium is obligately aerobic but readily degrades glucose and maltose producing acetic acid. It is TMPD (tetramethyl-p-phenylenediamine) or terminal oxidase, superoxide dismutase and catalase positive The meningococci are divided into 10 serogroups on the basis of polysaccharide capsular antigens: A, B, Cl+, Cl-, D, W-135, X, Y, Z and Z'. This organism is further classified on the basis of outer membrane protein and lipopolysaccharide antigens (Gotschlich, 1980).

N. meningitidis causes 10-30% of cases of adult meningitis and 30-40%, of cases of meningitis in children under age 15. The human nasopharynx is the natural reservoir of this pathogen and 5-30% of the population normally are asymptomatic carriers. In the susceptible host, the organism may cause pharyngitis and from the masopharynx may invade the blood stream to cause meningococcemia. Meningococci may spread to the skin, eyes, joints, heart, adrenals and meninges in which case the leptomeninges, pia and arachnoid matter become inflamed Most patients develop a petechial rash. In 10-20% of cases fulminant meningococcemia occurs and shock and vascular collapse may ensue; death may occur due to cardiac or respiratory failure.

In a series of studies by Archibald and DeVoe (1978, 1979, 1980) the Fe requirements for the growth of N. meningitidis were determined and the ability of the organism to grow on many different Fe-containing compounds was examined. It was found that N. meningitidis SD1C in continuous culture

required 11-17 ug Fe per g (dry weight) for slow cell division and maintenance of viability (Archibald and DeVoe, 1978). N. meningitidis, unlike most bacteria, was not found to produce siderophores (Archibald and DeVoe, $N_{\rm D}$ meningitidis, however, demonstrated 'the rare procaryotic 1979). ability to obtain Fe from Tf when Fe deprived Contact between the organism and the If protein was necessary proving that the meningococcus ob-Yancey and Finkelstein (1981) reported tains Fe by binding Tf directly that hydroxamate siderophores had been isolated from concentrated supernatants of both N meningitidis' and N. gonorrhoeae cultures. These siderophores were stimulatory in the Arthrobacter flavescens JG-9 bioassay for hydroxamic acid siderophores. West and Sparling (1985), however, found that the uninoculated culture media which included Proteose, Peptone contained small amounts of siderophore-like activity and no increased amount of siderophore activity above that found in uninoculated media could be found in supernatants from N gonorrhoeae cultures. West and Sparling further pointed out that the very small amount of siderophore found in supernatants by Yancey and Finkelstein would be unlikely to be sufficient to support the growth of the gonococcus. Thus the results of Archibald and Devoe, West and Sparling and also of Simonson et al. (1982) indicate that the pathogenic neisseriae do not produce siderophores in vitro. The possibility that these organisms may produce siderophores in vivo cannot be ruled out but this would be difficult to test.

N. meningitidis can also use Fe from FeCl₃, fearric citrate, hog gastric mucin, hemoglopin and myoglobin but cannot readily use Fe from conalbumin, ferritin, cytochrome c or certain microbial siderophores including desferrioxamine, ferrichrome or enterochelin (Archibald and DeVoe, 1979;

~

1980). Mickelsen and Sparling (1981) reported that all N. meningitidis and N. gonorrhoeae strains examined could utilize Fe from 25% Fe-saturated Tf but most commensal strains were inhibited by this protein. In a subsequent study, Mickelsen et al. (1982) examined 107 Neisseria strains to determine which ones could use lactoferrin (Lf) Fe for growth. All meningococcal strains examined, 53% of gonococcal strains and 24% of commensal strains (N. lactamica, N sicca, N. flava etc.) could utilize Fe from this compound.

Simonson *et al.* (1982) found that both Fe-deprived and Fe-sufficient meningococci could bind Tf but only the Fe-deprived cells could take up Fe from this protein; maximal uptake occurred after A h of Fe deprivation. Binding of Tf was energy-independent but Fe uptake required a functional electron transport chain as azide, cyanide and antimycin A inhibited uptake. If cells were exposed to trypsin or 60° C temperatures for 5 min Fe uptake was abolished Apo Tf was bound to the same extent as 30° Fesaturated Tf suggesting that the bacterium recognizes the protein not the Fe moiety of the molecule The ability of *N. meningitidis* to obtain Fe from Tf may represent an important virulence factor for this organism as the non-pathogenic *N. flava* and *M. sicca* could not obtain Fe from Tf even when Fe-starved.

Brener et al. (1981) found that if N. meningitidis was grown at low pH (6.6) under Fe-limited conditions the virulence of the organism for mice was enhanced 1200-fold. Cells grown at pH 6 6 or under Fe-deprived conditions at pH 7.2 demonstrated enhanced synthesis of an outer membrane protein of 69,000 daltons. Masson and Holbein (1985) demonstrated that when N. meningitidis was grown in Fe-limited media at low pH the virulence

81.

of the organism for mice, the amount of capsular polysaccharide and cell surface hydrophilicity were all increased. Mietzner et al. (1986) examined many Neisseria strains for the presence of a 37,000 dalton Fe-regulated outer membrane protein which was first observed in N. gonorrhoeae (Mietzner et al., 1984). This protein was found in 40 strains of N. gonorrhoeae, N. meningitidis, N. lactamica and N. cinerea while 17 strains from other species of Neisseria and Branhamella did not demonstrate the presence of this Fe-regulated protein except for one strain of N subflava. This antigen therefore appeared to be conserved among pathogenic neisseriae. It was also reported that sera from patients recovering from gonococcal infections had antibodies to this 37,000 dalton protein. As the authors point out, this latter finding suggests that this protein is expressed and antigenic in vivo. This finding coupled with the fact that the protein appears among pathogenic neisseriae suggests that the protein may have an essential pathogenic function in vivo. However, the precise role of this protein in Fe acquisition and pathogenicity remains unknown at this time. In a recent study Black et al (1986) wanted to determine whether Ferepressible outer membrane proteins in N. meningitidis were expressed and immunogenic during infection. They examined purified membranes from four disease isolates by Western blotting with patient sera. The patients' con-.valescent sera contained IgG and IgM antibodies to a 70,000 dalton Fe-regulated protein and IgG antibody to a 94,000 dalton.protein in the outer membrane of the Ν. meningitidis culture isolated from the corresponding patient. Neither acute phase nor pooled normal sera contained antibodies to these proteins. Antigenic cross-reactivity was apparent as certain patient antibodies would react with Fe-regulated membrane

antigens from isolates of other patients. These authors further described an interesting meningococcal mutant which did not possess the 70,000 dalton Fe-regulated protein and was unable to use Tf or Lf for growth or to take up appreciable ⁵⁵Fe from Tf or Lf. Unfortunately, this mutant has proved transformation incompetent and genetic analysis of the system has not progressed (D Dyer, personal communication). The initial findings, however, suggest that this protein has a central role in Fe acquisition from Tf or Lf and may be an important virulence factor particularly as the ability to deferrate Tf directly has an obvious advantage in the meningococcal invasion of the blood and cerebrospinal fluid, and because the host Fe status clearly affects the course and outcome of experimental murine meningococcemia (Holbein, 1980, 1981):

2.3 Importance of Fe in biological systems

Certain atomic properties of Fe; primarily its unpaired electrons and two valences make it the most versatile transition metal and thus an important component of many biologically important compounds. Heme Fe is present in hemoglobin, myoglobin, cytochromes, and in enzymes such as the catalases and peroxidases. Non-heme Fe containing enzymes include nonheme oxidases and oxygenases, Fe-sulfur proteins, superoxide dismutase, nitrogenases and ribonuc eotide reductase. Fe exists in the ferrous (Fe^{2+}) and the ferric (Fe³⁺)/state and can readily undergo changes from one valence state to another. This is important, for example, in mitochondrial and bacterial electron transport chains for electron transfer. Fe is uniquely suited for electron transfer reactions as it can be poised at a

10

wide range of redox potentials. The Fe valence electrons have the ability to exist in low or high spin states. These properties enable it to catalyze many reactions involving oxygen reduction (Wrigglesworth °and Baum, 1980).

Although Fe is the second most abundant metal and the fourth most abundant element in the earth's crust, in a well-aerated neutral or alkaline solution Fe is usually in the ferric form and readily forms insoluble complexes. Ferric salts at neutral pH form $Fe(OH)_3$ which has a solubility product of 4 X 10⁻³⁶ (Free [Fe]/[Fe(OH)₃]. Thus any free Fe in excess of 2.5 X 10⁻¹⁸ M would be precipitated in the form of the hydroxide (Bullen, et al., 1978). As cells require 0.4-4.0 uM environmental Fe for growth (Weinberg, 1981) organisms have evolved specialized Fe transport, storage and solubilizing systems. In vertebrates, most Fe is bound to proteins probably because free Fe could catalyze the production of highly destructive radicals, provide nutrition for invading parasites and not be efficiently stored, controlled or-transported.

2.4 The role of Fe in metabolism

2.4.1 The vertebrate Fe cycle

The human body contains approximately 50 mg kg⁻¹ Fe. Hemoglobin comprises 60-70% of the body Fe, myoglobin, cytochromes and enzymes 10% and the Fe-storage proteins ferritin and hemosiderin contain 20-30%. The transport protein Tf only contains 0.1-0.2% of body Fe (May and Williams, 1980). The Fe cycle in the body is dynamic and Fe metabolism is under

stringent control. An individual's daily dietary intake of Fe is approximately 10 mg of which only 1.0-1.5 mg is absorbed (Conrad and Barton, An equal amount of Fe is lost daily from the feces, urine and 1981). sloughed skin, intestinal epithelial cells and body secretions. Absorption of Fe involves at least 2 steps: mucosal (villus cell brush border) uptake from the intestinal lumen and mucosal transfer (villus cell basolateral membrane export) to the plasma. Fe is solubilized by gastric acid and is absorbed in the upper duodenum. The mechanisms of Fe transit through the intestinal mucosa have not been elucidated (Finch and Huebers, 1986) but absorption of Fe is usually regulated according to the body's requirements. Fe in excess of body needs may be stored in the duodenal mucosa in the form of the storage compound ferritin. Some of this Fe may be subsequently lost when the intestinal villus cells are sloughed Heme Fe is absorbed more efficiently than inorganic Fe; however, the absorption of inorganic Fe is enhanced by ascorbic acid, amino acids and sugars. Absorbed Fe is bound by important role of the transport protein Tf in the blood and lymph. An this protein is to transport Fe from absorption sites to all cells which require it including erythroid cells in the bone margow, placental cells to transfer Fe to the developing fetus, and to lymphocytes and other proliferating cells. If also transports Fe to Fe storage sites such as the liver. In immature erythroid cells Fe is incorporated into hemoglobing the oxygen carrying protein of erythrocytes. At the end of their life span, approximately 120 days in man, red blood cells are degraded and removed by the reticuloendothelial (RE) system. The RE system consists of the total body pool of macrophages and includes all phagocytic cells except granulocytic leukocytes. The Fe from senescent erythrocytes enters a

Fig. 1 The vertebrate Fe cycle.



•

labile pool from whence it is either released again to the Tf pool (early release) or it enters the RE storage Fe pool (late release); the Fe storage compounds are ferritin and hemosiderin. In the dog, the early and late release Fe pools have half-lives of 30 min and 7 days respectively and the two pools contain equal amounts of Fe (Fillet *et al.*, 1974). In man, 70% of RE Fe is in the early and 30% is in the late system. With the return of Fe once again to Tf the cycle is complete (Fig. 1). Tf is thus the central component of the Fe cycle. The Tf's are actually a family of proteins divided into two groups: or group contains serum Tf and conal-bumin (chicken, ovotransferrin); the other group is comprised of the lactoferrins (Aisen, 1980).

2.4.2 The transferrins

2.4.2.1 Transferrin

Tf is found in the serum of vertebrates at a concentration of 2-3 mg ml^{-1} and is also found in the extravascular fluids such as lymph, cerebrospinal fluid and ascites fluid (Morgan, 1981). Tf is synthesized primarily by the liver hepatocytes but can be synthesized in small amounts by Sertoli cells (Skinner and Griswold, 1980), neuronal-glial cells (Markelonis *et al.*, 1982) and by lymphocytes (Soltys and Brody, 1970). Schade and Caroline (1946) first identified Tf in Cohn's fraction IV-3,4 of human plasma proteins and named it siderophilin. Holmberg and Laufell (1947) also discovered the protein in porcine serum and after elucidating the transport function of this protein called it transferrin. Tf is an

80,000 dalton, single chain polypeptide consisting of 679 amino acids (MacGillivray *et al.*, 1983). Tf is a glycoprotein; human Tf contains 6% carbohydrate as two identical chains (Aisen and Listowsky, 1980) attached to asparagine residues 413 and 611 (MacGillivray *et al*, 1983). The carbohydrate fhain cons^dists of two sialic acid, two galactose, three mannose, and four N-acetylglucosamine residues and the sequence was determined by Spik *et al.* (1975).

The complete amino acid sequence of human Tf has been determined from peptide analysis (MacGillivray et al., 1982) and through sequence analysis (Uzan *et al.*, 1984). This globular protein contains two of cDNA homologous domains in which 40% of the amino acid residues are identical; each domain possesses one Fe-binding site (Aisen and Listowsky, 1980) terestingly, it is believed that the ancestral Tf protein was approximately 40,000 daltons and contained one Fe-binding site and by a process of gene duplication and fusion the larger two-sited protein evolved (Greene and Feeney, 1968). Pyura stolonifera, an invertebrate which arose 200,000,000 years ago has an Fe-binding protein of approximately 41,000 (+/- 2,000) daltons with one Fe-binding site (Martin et al., 1984) which can bind to the human Tf receptor and donate Fe for hemoglobin synthesis. It has been suggested that the ancestral molecule was duplicated after the development of a secretory kidney which would have excreted a molecule of 41,000 dal-Each molecule of Tf thus binds two molecules tons (Williams et al., 1982). of Fe in the ferric state. The protein's affinity for Fe is extremely the association constant is approximately 10^{36} ([TfFe]/[Tf][Fe]) high; (Aasa et al., 1963). The binding of Fe occurs with the concomitant binding of a carbonate or bicarbonate anion and the release of three protons (Aisen

and Listowsky, 1980). The simultaneous binding of the anion and metal is a unique biochemical feature of Tf. Tf can bind other transition metals but binds ferric Fe with the highest affinity (Tan and Woodworth, 1969). When Tf has bound Fe the complex forms a salmon-pink color with an absorbance maximum at 465 nm. In the N-terminal domain of human Tf the Fe binding ligands are thought to include: tyrosine residues 95 and 188, histidine residue 249 and aspartate 63. The arginine residue at position 124 has been suggested to be the position at which the anion binds (Chasteen, 1987).

Much controversy has arisen in the past concerning whether the two Febinding sites on Tf are identical in their Fe-binding properties and their functions. Fletcher and Huehns (1968) put forth the idea that Fe from the C-terminal or A site was donated preferentially to erythroid cells and to the placenta and that Fe from the N-terminal or B-site was given to storage or intestinal cells. It is currently believed, however, that there is not a functional difference between the two monoferric species of Tf in donating Fe to cells. This has been demonstrated by Delaney et al., (1982) for rabbit reticulocytes and Van der Heul et al. (1984) in human lymphocytes, hepatocytes and bone marrow cells. In vitro studies, however, have revealed certain physicochemical differences between the two Fe binding Studies by Princiotto, and Zapolski (1975) and Lestas (1976) sites. revealed that the two Fe binding sites differ with respect to the pH at which Fe is released. The C-terminal Fe-binding site is more acid stable and retains Fe longer with decreasing pH (Marx, 1984). At pH 6.7 the Nterminal site has less than one-twentieth the affinity of Fe that the Cterminal site has while at pH 7.4 the affinities differ by only a factor of

Ъ

five or six (Aisen and Listowsky, 1980). In human serum more Fe is bound to the N-terminal than to the C-terminal binding site (Leibman and Aisen, 1979); 44% of Tf is present as apo-Tf, 24% is N-terminal monoferric Tf, 10% is 9-terminal monoferric and 22% is diferric Tf (Williams, J., 1979).

The Tf gene in the human is located on the long arm of chromosome 3 (Yang et al., 1984); it is 33.5 kb in length and composed of 17 exons and 16 introns. The DNA sequence of 620 bp of the 5' region of the human Tf gene was recently studied by Lucero et al (1986). Several putative regulatory regions were identified including. metal binding' regulatory elements, transcription factor binding sequences, a progesterone receptor element, a glucocorticoid regulatory sequence, a cAMP regulatory domain and several DNA enhancers. These authors point out that this study represents an interesting first step in the study of regulation of Tf gene expression.

Although each molecule Tf can bind two molecules of Fe, Tf is normally only 30% saturated with Fe in the human (Bullen *et al*, 1978) and 50% saturated in the mouse (Letendre and Holbein, 1983). This degree of unsaturation is important as not only must Tf transport Fe to cells requiring it but this protein must also withhold Fe from pathogenic organisms.

2.4.2.2 Conalbumin

Conalbumin or ovotransferrin, first-discovered in 1899 (Osborne and Campbell, 1900) is found in egg white and comprises 12% of egg white solids (Weinberg, 1984). The apparent function of conalbumin is to bind Fe and withhold it from bacteria which could infect the egg. The Fe-binding properties of this protein were discovered in 1943 by Schade and Caroline
(Schade and Caroline, 1944) who were using egg white to lyophilize Shigella dysenteriae and found that some component of the egg white prevented growth of the organism. These authors tested 10 vitamins and 31 elements but only Fe overcame the growth inhibition. Conalbumin is also a single chain polypeptide but it contains only one oligosaccharide chain composed of 4 residues of mannose and 8 of N-acetylglucosamine (Williams, 1968).

,2.4.2.3 Lactoferrin

Lactoferrin (Lf), the other important member of the Tf family, was discovered in human milk in 1939 and was purified in 1958 by Johansson. Human milk contains 2-6 mg ml⁻¹ Lf (Bullen et al., 1972) which represents 20% of the protein content; the concentration of milk Lf, however, varies among the different mammalian species (Bezkorovainy, 1980). Lf is found in other exocrine secretions such as mucus, tears, saliva and also in the specific granules of polymorphonuclear leukocytes (Bezkorovainy, 1980) but its concentration in the serum is normally only 0.01 uM (0.8 ug ml⁻¹) et al., 1971). Lf, like Tf , is a glycoprotein with a molecular (Rumke weight of approximately 80,000 daltons and each molecule can bind two ferric Fe molecules but Lf has a higher affinity for Fe (Aisen and 'Leibman, 1972). Lf has some amino acid homology with Tf but as shown by Blanc and Isliker (1961) is antigenically distinct. Lf has an important antimicrobial role in the body; it is present in exocrine secretions and is well-situated to withhold Fe from potential pathogens. Lf continues[®] to bind Fe even when the pH is below 4; it could thus bind Fe in vivo at sites where the pH has been lowered due to lactic acid release from bacteria or

leukocytes (Weinberg, 1984), Brock (1980) has also suggested that Lf might have a role in suppressing intestinal Fe absorption in infants. Lf in milk at an average concentration of 3 mg ml⁻¹ contains 0.21 ug ml⁻¹ Fe; this represents 5% Fe-saturation of the protein (Finkelstein et al., 1983). Thus Lf is highly unsaturated accounting for its strong Fe-withholding and antimicrobial properties. The body's Fe-binding proteins Tf and Lf are only partially saturated with Fe and have very high association constants The amount of free Fe in equilibrium with these proteins is about for Fe. 10⁻¹⁸ M (Bullen et al., 1978) well below the 0.4-4.0 uM level required for Tf and Lf therefore have very important anti-bacterial bacterial growth. roles?. The importance of Fe in microbial infection and the bacteriostatic effects of Tf and Lf have been appreciated for many years. Numerous in vitro studies have demonstrated that serum is bacteriostatic but when , enough Fe is added to saturate the Tf the bacteriostatic properties are lost. This has been shown using many organisms including. Clostridium perfringens (Rogers, 1967), Escherichia coli (Fletcher, 1971) and Mycobacterium tuberculosis (Kochan, 1973). Similarly it has been shown that the injection of Fe compounds enhances bacterial virulence in wivo. Jackson and Burrows (1956) working with Yersinia pestis found that avirulent colony types could become virulent for mice by adding Fe to the inocula. Bullen et al. (1968) found that if guinea pigs were injected intraperitoneally with 2-7 X 10^4 E. coli Olll, the organisms did not proliferate but if the inoculum was injected with enough ferric ammonium citrate to saturate cir-. culating Tf, with hemoglobin, lysed erythrocytes or hematin hydrochloride the bacteria grew quickly and the animals died. In a later study, Bullen et al. (1974) investigating Pseudomonas aeruginosa infection in rabbits.

found that a sublethal infecting dose of bacteria led to fatal rapid growth if Fe compounds were injected. These authors also, found that *Pseudomonas* grew slowly in peritoneal fluid or in media containing unsaturated Tf and twice as quickly when the Tf in peritoneal, fluid or media was saturated with Fe. They observed that *Pseudomonas* infection caused a rapid drop in the percentage Fe saturation of Tf in the plasma-and peritoneal fluids.

It has been suggested that breast feeding protects infants against E. coli enteritis and other infections due to the combination of antibodies, lysozyme and Lf found in human milk (Bullen *et al.*, 1978). Bullen *et al.* (1972) found that if E. coli Olll was inoculated into human milk to which bicarbonate had been added growth was inhibited. If enough Fe was added to saturate the Lf, E. coli was able to proliferate rapidly in the milk. The addition of bicarbonate allowed adventitious Fe to be bound to the Lf. If bicarbonate was not added, the citrate in the milk permitted E. coli to take up the non-Lf bound Fe as Fe-citrate (Bullen *et al.*, 1978).

2.4.3 Ferritin and metabolic Fe storage

Efficient Fe storage is very important as the body has a continuing, need for Fe but free low molecular weight Fe could catalyze the production of free-radicals and increase the possibility of infection. In certain cases the body's demand for Fe may exceed the dietary intake and storage Fe must be mobilized. Ferritin and hemosiderin are the two compounds responsible for Fe storage. Ferritin can be synthesized by all body cells but the liver, spleen and bone marrow are especially ferritin-rich (Aisen and, Listowsky, 1980). Interestingly, ferritin is not only synthesized by

vertebrates but is found in invertebrates, plants, fungi,° and in certain bacteria (Crichton, 1984). Ferritin has a molecular weight of 450,000 daltons and is composed of 24 polypeptide chains (Crichton and Bryce, 1970, Bryce and Crichton, 1971) forming a shell in which Fe is deposited. The ferritin molecule is spherical and compact; the outside diameter is 124-130 A, the interior is hollow with the inside diameter being 70-80 A Six channels connect the hollow interior to the outside (Harrison, 1977). Each ferritin molecule can hold a maximum of 4500 Fe atoms but ferritin molecules are usually only two-thirds full. Fe enters ferritin in the ferrous form but is actually stored in the ferric form as $(FeOOH)_{R}$ (Fe0.OPO₃H₂) (Bezkorovainy, 1980). In the human there are two types of ferritin polypeptide chains designated H and L. H chains have a molecular weight of 21,000 daltons while L chains are 19,000 daltons (Arosio et al., 1978). Tissue isoferritins have different ratios of H and L subunits. In heart and neoplastic tissue H chains predominate, while L chains predominate in liver and spleen (Drysdale, 1977). The amount of ferritin in the serum reflects the size of body Fe stores and is very small under normal conditions but may increase in certain disease states. Serum ferritin has a low Fe content and is glycosylated.

The entrance of Fe into cells causes enhanced ferritin synthesis which is not inhibited by actinomycin D (Drysdale and Munro, 1966). Ferritin m-RNA in the cell is regulated by an apoferritin subunit attached to it which prevents translation. When low molecular weight Fe enters the cell it can bind to the ferritin subunit removing it and allowing the m-RNA to be translated (Zahringer *et al.*, 1976). The half-life of ferritin in the rat is 3 days after which it is degraded by proteolytic enzymes in the

cytosol and secondary lysosomes. It is believed that degradation of ferritin results in the formation of the other Fe storage compound hemosiderin.

2.4.4 Ceruloplasmin

The last protein of Fe metabolism to be discussed is ceruloplashin (Cp) the protein responsible for removing Fe from storage and returning it to the Tf pool. Cp is a single chain serum glycoprotein with a molecular weight of 132,000 daltons which contains 6 atoms of copper per molecule (Frieden, 1980). Seven biological functions have been ascribed to this protein the most pertinent being that it acts as a vehicle for transport of segum copper, it is an acute phase reactant protein and its serum concentration increases during the inflammatory response, and it has a role in mobilizing Fe from storage sites back into the Tf pool by virtue of its ferroxidase activity (Frieden, 1986). The serum ferroxidase activity of Cp was first postulated by Osaki et al. (1966) It is thought to behave as follows at least in RE cells: ferritin Fer stored in the ferric state is reduced by ferritin reductase using flavin mononucleotide FMNH₂ as the reductant (Sirivech et al., 1974) which is itself reduced by NADH + H^+ . Fe (II) binds to certain sites on the RE cell membranes and when Cp binds to form a Cp Fe (II) complex Fe is oxidized and transferred to aport (Frieden, 1983).

The importance of Cp in Fe metabolism has been demonstrated in several animal studies. When swine (Lee *et al.*, 1968; Roeser *et al.*, 1970) or mice (Letendre and Holbein, 1984a) were placed on copper-deficient diets

21 🌾

they became both hypoceruloplasminemic and hypoferremic displaying lowered serum levels of both Cp and Fe. When Cp was administered to these animals, plasma Fe levels increased immediately. Lowering of serum Fe occurred because the transfer of Fe from the RE cell to Tf was inhibited interrupting the Fe cycle. When Cp was again made available, Fe was released from storage with the resulting increase in serum Fe levels.

2.5 Changes'in Fe metabolism during infection

It was emphasized in the above discussion that Fe metabolism is strictly regulated and is composed of various pools connected by the central transport component Tf. The Fe system is also dynamic; Fe is continually being turned over and moving through these interconnected pools. Because of the dynamic nature of the Fe system relatively rapid changes in Fe metabolism can occur during an inflammatory response In 1932 Locke et al. reported that pulmonary patients with tuberculosis had lower levels of serum Fe and horses injected with diphtheria toxin had reduced serum Fe In a study by Pekarek et al. (1969) human volunteers were exposed levels. to the bacterial pathogen Francisella tularensis and serum Fe levels were monitored. These levels were found to fall from an initial mean level on day 0 of 22.3 uM to 6.4 uM on day 5. In an experimental model of bacterial infection, Holbein (1980) injected C57 black mice intraperitoneally with 10^4 Neisseria meningitidis and monitored bacteria in the blood and plasma Fe levels over a 24 h period. Infection peaked at 6 h and disappeared after 9 h. The unsaturated iron binding capacity of the plasma increased immediately after injection with a corresponding drop in Tf-Fe saturation.

ູ 22

No Tf-Fe could be detected in the plasma at 18 or 24 h post infection demonstrating a very marked hypoferremic response. The decline in bacterial numbers corresponded to the decrease in plasma Fe. Injections of Fe as Fe-dextran (Holbein *et al.*, 1979; Holbein, 1980) or human Tf (Holbein, 1981) enhanced infection. Thus the hypoferremic response controlled the infection by denying the pathogen the Fe it required for growth

Hypoferremia can also be induced experimentally by injections of endotoxin (Kampschmidt et al., 1965) or turpentine (Cartwright et al., 1946; Kampschmidt and Upchurch, 1962; Hershko et al., 1974, Beaumier ef al., 1984). Lee (1983) observed that two theories have been put forward concerning how the hypoferremic response occurs. Van Snick et al. (1974) proposed that hypoferremia occurs because Lf, when released from neutrophils during inflammation, removes Fe from Tf or competes with Tf for Fe released from macrophages. Lf then returns Fe to macrophages of the RE system and it is incorporated into Fe stores. Alternatively, Konijn and Hershko (1977) found that when hypoferremia was induced in rats by turpentine injection serum Fe levels began to fall at 6 h and were at the lowest level by 12-24 h post-injection. Enhanced ferritin synthesis, however, was maximal by 4-8 h post injection. Thus the decrease in serum Fe was preceded by an increase in ferritin synthesis. It was therefore postulated that incorporation of Fe into newly synthesized apoferritin prevents Fe from being immediately re-released into the Tf pool resulting in a decrease in the amount of Tf- bound Fe and in a hypoferremic response.

Letendre and Holbein (1983) investigated Fe kinetics in normal mice and in hypoferremic mice injected with N. meningitidis. Mice of both groups were injected with murine Tf labelled with 59 Fe and 125 I and the

temporal movement of the label through the body's Fe compartments was followed. Fe moved from Tf to the bone marrow then to erythrocytes. Fe kinetics in infected mice were similar to normal mice. There was no intcreased turnover of plasma Fe and no channelling of plasma Fe to storage compartments during hypoferremia. In a later study, (Letendre and Holbein, 1984) control and hypoferremic mice were injected with ⁵⁹Fe-labelled heatdamaged red blood cells and the fate of the label was followed in the two In the hypoferremic mice, the Fe from effete erythrocytes was not groups immediately returned to the Tf pool, as for control mice, but was stored in the RE system in ferritin. These authors (Letendre and Holbein, 1983) argued against a direct role for Lf in mediating hypoferremia as large quantities of Lf would be required to effect the decrease in plasma Fe ob-These authors, however, did not rule out an indirect role for Lf served. during hypoferremia by sequestering Fe at the site of inflammation in the peritoneal cavity. Alternatively, Lf might be involved in the impairment of Fe release from the RE system.

The mechanism triggering the hypoferremic response has not been elucidated. Many authors have presented evidence indicating that the compound known as endogenous pyrogen, leukocyte endogenous mediator (LEM) or interleukin-1 (IL-1) is involved in triggering the response (Lee, 1983) The first evidence for the existence of this compound was presented in 1948 (Beeson, 1948). It was discovered that a substance was liberated from polymorphonuclear leukocytes obtained from sterile peritoneal exudates of rabbits which could induce fever. Further work by Kampschmidt and Upchurch (1962; 1969) and Pekarek and Beisel (1971) elucidated the role of LEM in lowering serum Fe during inflammation.

24,

LEM or IL-1 is a heat-labile protein of 13,000-16,000 daltons. It is synthesized and released by activated phagocytic cells (Bornstein, 1982) which can be stimulated by phagocytosis of foreign particles , endotoxin (Kampschmidt, 1978) or lymphokines produced during a mixed lymphocyte reaction (Dinarello, 1981). Three hours after activation of phagocytie cells, LEM is released (Dinarello. and Wolff, 1978) by a process involving the synthesis of new m-RNA and protein. LEM or IL-1 is also responsible for the induction of fever and the enhanced synthesis of acute phase reactant proteins such as C-reactive protein, haptoglobin, serum amyloid A protein and ceruloplasmin (Kampschmidt, 1978). During infection and inflammation the host often develops a fever. This elevated body temperature may interfere with the ebility of bacteria to synthesize siderophores (Weinberg, 1981). During the inflammation associated with infection serum concentrations of Cp may be increased. Letendre and Holbein (1984a) demonstrated that Cp levels rose dramatically during the recovery phase of murine meningococcal infection. Cp levels rose between 18 and 24 h post injection and were greater than 200% of control values at 24 h post inoculation. Beaumier et al. (1984) reported similar observations for turpentine-induced inflammation in mice and showed that the substantial increase in serum Cp was due to de novo Cp synthesis. It was suggested (Letendre and Holbein, 1984a) that Cp is synthesized during the recovery phase of infection in response to hypoferremia to help mobilize Fe from the RE system to reestablish normal serum Fe levels.

1

Changes in Fe metabolism during neoplastic disease

2.6

Many of the changes in Fe metabolism which occur during infection also occur during cancer. In an early study of Fe metabolism in malignant disease, Miller et al. (1956), found that cancer patients had serum Fe levels of 30-165 ug dl⁻¹ compared to the normal range of 70-155 ug dl⁻¹ These authors noted that the serum Fe response paralleled the disease state. As the neoplasm spread serum Fe levels decreased further; conversely, if the clinical state improved for example due to surgery, the serum Fe levels rose again. It was further observed that hypoferremia was usually but not always accompanied by anemia. Beamish et al (1972) compared serum Fe levels of normal controls with those of patients with Hodgkin's disease and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma Controls had a mean serum Fe level of 127 ug d1-1 (22.7 uM) and 35% Tf-Fe saturation; patients with stage 4 Hodgkin's disease had serum Fe levels of 39 ug dl⁻¹ (6.97 uM) and Tf-Fe saturation of 163Patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma had 60 ug dl⁻¹ $_{6}(10.7 \text{ uM})$ serum Fe and a 17% Tf-Fe saturation. Hypoferremia was found to result from impaired $\mathsf{R} ilde{\mathsf{E}}$ release of Fe.

In an experimental model of neoplastic disease, Chandler and Fletcher (1973) examined Fe metabolism in chickens injected with a lymphoid tumor. The chickens developed hypoferremia, anemia and had increased Fe stores in the spleen and liver. When tumor-bearing birds were injected with ⁵⁹Fe-Tf, the tumor incorporated label at three times the rate of spleen and threequarters that of liver when uptake was related to organ weight 24 h post injection. The authors concluded that a combination of Fe uptake by the

tumor and a blockage in Fe re-utilization caused the decrease in serum Fe. These studies also imply that Fe is required for rapid tumor growth. Schade (1976) observed that mice injected with plasmacytoma cells had lowered levels of serum Fe and anemia. These plasmacytoma cells contained high levels of non-heme Fe in the form of ferritin while the livers of tumor-bearing mice contained lowered levels of Fe as compared to controls. When tumor-bearing mice were injected with excess Fe, the excess Fe was stored in the liver not in the tumor cells. The author concluded that plasmacytoma cells may deprive other cells of Fe to meet their own needs but do not store Fe over and above their needs. Tumor cells would require Fe as an enzyme co-factor for several Fe-containing enzymes including. ribonucleotide reductase, which is necessary for DNA synthesis, catalase, peroxidase, tryptophan 2,3 dioxygenase and phenylalanine, tyrosine and tryptophan hydroxylases.

In contrast to the development of hypoferremia during neoplasia, Caroline *et al.* (1969) reported that 64% of patients with acute myeloblastic leukemia examined had elevated serum Fe levels. Several patients had Tf-Fe saturations of above 50% while others had 100% Fe-saturated Tf. This was correlated with the high incidence of *Candida* and other fungal infections in leukemia patients as *in vitro* experiments demonstrated that growth of *Candida* albicans was 1000 times greater in leukemic sera than in normal sera. In a later study by Hunter *et al.* (1984) it was again pointed out that acute leukemia differs from other forms of neoplasia as it is associated with hyperferremia. This condition is associated with low levels of serum Tf, high levels of serum Fe and an inability of the host to reduce Fe levels when an infection occurs. Sera from leukemic patients showed a

reduced ability to inhibit growth of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, a type of infection from which leukemic patients frequently die. Suppression of bone marrow function in this disease produces hyperferremia by decreasing Fe utilization by erythroid cells. Marrow suppression also leads to monocytopenia and neutropenia. Monocytes are responsible for the release of LEM (IL-1) and induction of hypoferremia and neutrophils release Lf which deprives bacteria of Fe at infection sites. This complex interaction of factors may well be responsible for the high rate of infection in these patients.

Abnormalities of Fe storage have been reported in certain cases of neoplastic disease. Dumont *et al.* (1976) reported that patients with untreated Hodgkin's disease had markedly elevated levels of hemosiderin in the lymph nodes. Patients did not have excessive Fe in their livers where the Kupffer cells normally account for 85% of the body RE activity. These authors further observed that patients with lymph nodes affected by non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and metastatic carcinoma had somewhat elevated lymph node Fe deposition. De Sousa *et al.* (1978) suggested that abnormal handling of Fe by monocytes of the spleen and lymph nodes may be linked to the pathogenesis of Hodgkin's disease.

Concentrations of ferritin in the serum have been observed to increase in several types of malignant disease. Jones *et al.* (1973) measured serum ferritin levels in patients with Hodgkin's disease and leukemia. The mean normal concentration for men and women respectively was 69 and 34 ng ml⁻¹. Patients with Hodgkin's disease had an average level of 215 ng ml⁻¹. Those with acute myeloblastic leukemia had a mean level of 589 ng ml⁻¹. Jacobs *et al.* (1976) found serum ferritin levels in Hodgkin's disease patients in-

creased at each advancing stage of the disease. In a further study, Jacobs et al. (1976a) found that women with early breast cancer had a mean serum ferritin level of 96.9 ug 1⁻¹ while the control mean concentration was 56.6 ug 1⁻¹. Furthermore, patients with an initial level above 200 ug 1⁻¹ had a higher tumor recurrence rate over the next 4 years. In gertain malignant diseases the increase in plasma ferritin may be related to an increased synthesis of this compound by the tumor cells (Sarcione *et al.*, 1977; White *et al.*, 1974).

Neoplastic disease is often accompanied by what is termed the anemia of chronic disease. This is characterized by a decrease in serum Fe concentration and decrease in Tf saturation, decreased serum total Fe-binding capacity and normal or increased Fe stores. The pathogenesis of this anemia may be typified by: shortened red cell survival, impaired bone marrow response to the anemia and impaired flow of Fe from the RE cells to the serum and thus to the bone marrow for erythropoiesis (Cartwright and Lee, 1971; Lee, 1983). Zucker (1985) pointed out that anemia occurs with most cancer patients during the course of disease. Hemoglobin concentrations are generally 8-12 g dl⁻¹ and the packed cell volume 26-38%. The survival of red blood cells is only 60-90 days instead of the usual 120 days. The bone marrow should be able to compensate for this but does not. Three possible reasons were suggested for this: (i) impaired flow of Fe from the RE system to the bone marrow (ii) inadequate production of erythropoietin and (iii) impaired marrow response to erythropoietin. Anemia may also occur due to bone marrow invasion by tumor cells. In this case, it has been suggested that anemia may be caused by crowding/of the hematopoietic cells, production of, toxins by the cancer cells, competition between bone marrow

and neoplastic cells for nutrients or lysis of erythroid cells by tumor cells. Furthermore, anemia is complicated during neoplastic disease by blood loss, nutritional malabsorption, infection and radio- or chemotherapy.

Along with these many changes in Fe metabolism which occur in neoplastic disease, several investigators have examined changes in serum Cp levels with a view to utilizing Cp as a disease marker Linder et al. (1979) in an experimental study, evaluated Cp activity in rats implanted with hepatics or mammary tumors and recorded a 50-200% increase in Cp oxidase activity. This enhanced activity was attributable to both increased synthesis of Cp and augmented enzyme activity. In a later clinical study, Linder et al. (1981) assayed Cp levels incosera of male patients with lung cancer and gastrointestinal cancer and women with breast cancer Ср levels were significantly elevated in patients with stage 1 lung cancer and even higher in patients with stage II and III lung cancer. Patients successfully treated for the disease had lower Cp levels while recurrent elevations or rapid increases appeared to be indicative of disease recurrence. Cp levels in sera of patients with non-malignant lung disease also were somewhat increased. Male patients with non-malignant gastrointestinal disease did not have significantly higher (Cp levels while patients with gastrointeștinal cancer did, especially in the case of colon cancer. However, sera of control women had higher Cp levels than control men of similar ages thus Cp levels in patients with breast cancer did not show as great an elevation in serum Cp. Also, patients with non-malignant breast disease had elevated Cp levels which would make it difficult to distinguish neoplastic from non-neoplastic breast disease on the basis of Cp analysis.

It was therefore concluded that Cp analysis would be useful only in certain situations for cancer diagnosis or prognosis.

2.7 Fe and carcinogenesis

'It has been suggested that Fe, as well as being essential to life, in certain circumstances may have, carcinogenic or cocarcinogenic properties. The mechanisms by which this might occur are, however, poorly understood. Richmond (1961) reported that when cells in culture were exposed to Fedextran, abnormalities in cells undergoing mitosis were evident. Willson (1977) proposed that if excessive decompartmentalization of Fe occurs free radicals may be produced and cancer may follow. Low levels of low molecular weight Fe have been shown in several cases to markedly increase the destruction of DNA caused by the production of hydroxyl free radicals from the active oxygen species superoxide (0_2^{-}) and hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) . This was demonstrated by Brawn and Fridovich (1980) who showed that when the supercoiled E. coli plasmid Col E-1 was exposed to an enzymic flux of 0_2^{-1} and $H_2 0_2$ nicking of the DNA occurred as evidenced by the conversion of supercoiled DNA to the open circular form. That this damage was caused by hydroxyl radicals was shown as protection was offered by superoxide dismutase and catalase and by benzoate, mannitol or histidine, known scavengers of hydroxyl radicals.

[In another study, Robertson *et al.* (1971) reported on the incidence of cancer in gold mine workers in South Africa from 1964-1968. The cancer rate was surprisingly high and liver cancer was the most common type accounting for 486/923 (52.6%) of the cases. These patients were young males and came primarily from Mozambique and South Africa. This study was later correlated with an earlier report of Bothwell *et al.* (1964) which discussed the cases of Fe overload in Bantu patients in South Africa. It was found that males consumed large amounts of a home-made alcoholic beverage which was brewed in Fe-containing pots. This drink contained an average of 3.8mg Fe 100 ml⁻¹ and the Fe intake was estimated to be at least 50 mg per day.

In a later study, Bomford and Williams (1976) evaluated venesection therapy in patients with idiopathic hemocromatosis. It was observed that 29% of treated and 19% of untreated patients died of hepatoma and another 22% of treated patients died of other forms of malignant disease. Nettesheim et al. (1975) found that inhalation of Fe_2O_3 particles enhanced diethylnitrosamine tumorigenesis in the lower respiratory tract of Syrian In this case, Fe acted as a cocarcinogen. In 1977 Weinberg and hamsters. demonstrated that the tumoricidal activity of macrophages was in-Hibbs hibited by phagocytosis of red blood cells, hemoglobin, Fe salts or Fe-The authors therefore proposed that Fe could inhibit the tumor dextran. killing activity of macrophages thus decreasing the host resistance to tumor development.

The studies cited above imply that in particular situations Fe may have a role in causing cancer. How this occurs is unknown but it may involve the Fe-catalyzed production of free radicals or Fe may inhibit the function of macrophages responsible for surveillance against arising neoplastic cells.

2.8 Fe and in vitro animal cell culture

1

Numerous studies have examined the Fe requirements for in vitro culture of mammalian cells (Higuchi, 1970; Messmer, 1973; Rudland et al., 1977) and in all cases requirements were found to be within the range of 0.4-4.0 uM suggested as the range of Fe concentrations permitting growth of all cellular forms (Weinberg, 1981). Several studies have also shown that Tf is required for the growth of mammalian cells in serum-free medium (Barnes and Sato, 1980; Hayashi et al., 1978). Tf is also required for growth and DNA synthesis of mitogenically-stime lymphocytes (Tormey et al., 1972; Tormey and Mueller, 1972) Tf has also been shown to be a more effective Fe donor to cultured cells than Fe salts (Messmer, 1973). Fe is required for tissue culture cell lines for a critical step in DNA synthesis (Robbins et al., 1972; Fernandez-Pol, 1977) as cells deprived of Fe by Fe chelators become blocked in the G_1° or early S phase of the cell cycle (Fernandez-Pol, 1977; Basset et al., 1985). It has been suggested that Fe is required for DNA synthesis and cell division as it is a necessary component of the enzyme ribonucleotide reductase which, catalyzes the reduction of ribonucleosides to deoxyribonucleosides, an important step in DNA synthesis. Recently, Basset et al. (1985) showed that the antioxidant propyl gallate inhibited Tf enhanced growth of mouse L1210 leukemia celle and suggested that Fe could act via fatty acid hydroperoxide formation. It was further shown that hydroperoxides induced by Fe from unsaturated fatty acids could activate purified guanylate cyclase suggesting that cyclic GMP production may be associated with the mechanism by which Fe induces DNA synthesis.

There has been some speculation in the past that Tf may have another role in cell culture other than providing Fe to cells, for example, it might bind toxic cations or supply zinc to the cells (Brock, 1981). However, Titeux *et al.* (1984) demonstrated that Fe salts, hemin or hemoglobin could replace Tf for growth of human cell Fines in serum-free media and Landschultz *et al.* (1984) found that the Fe chelator ferric pyridoxal isconicotinoyl hydrazone could replace Tf in defined media to stimulate proliferation of mouse embryonic kidney tissue. These studies suggest that the role of Tf in cell culture is solely as an Fe donor. However, an alternate hypothesis will be discussed later.

2.9 • Cellular Fe acquisition

2.9.1 Microbial cells

As discussed in the above sections Fe in the host is well regulated. Tf and Lf have high association constants for Fe and are only partially saturated. Free Fe in equilibrium with Tf is 10^{-18} M and therefore is too low for bacterial growth. How then do bacterial pathogens multiply? Many bacteria and fungi synthesize and secrete Fe chelating compounds called sideropheres. The word siderophore means "iron-bearer" and siderophores are defined as low molecular weight (500-1000 daltons), nonporphyrin, nonprotein Fe-binding compounds produced by microorganisms (Neilands, 1981). There are two principal classes of siderophores, the phenolates or catechols and the hydroxamic acid siderophores. Siderophore Fe-binding ligands contain several sets of bidentate coordinating groups the donor

atoms of which are usually oxygens. Siderophores are considered to be . virulence factors in disease.

When available Fe is below 1 uM, the genes for the synthesis of both siderophores and the corresponding outer membrane siderophore receptor proteins are derepressed. Siderophores are synthesized and secreted from the cell, ferric Fe is bound, the receptor binds the ferri-siderophore and brings it through the cell envelope and Fe is released by reduction (Neilands, 1981):

Enteric bacteria such as Escherichia coli and Salmonella synthesize the phenolate siderophore enterochelin; this molecule is a cyclic trimer of 2.3. dihydroxy-N-benzoyl-L-serine and is synthesized from chorismate from a branch of the pathway of aromatic acid biosynthesis. Three Fe-repressible outer membrane proteins of 81,000, 83,000 and 74,000 daltons are synthesized along with enterochelin. The 81,000 dalton protein is the enterochelin receptor protein Fep A. Under low Fe stress, E. coli also synthesizes the 78,000 dalton outer membrane receptor called Fhu A, this is the receptor for the siderophore ferrichrome which is produced by certain fungi (Neilands, 1981; 1982). Siderophores have high affinity for Fe and several studies have suggested that siderophores act as virulence factors by enabling pathogens to acquire Fe from Tf. For example, Tidmarsh and Rosenberg (1981) demonstrated that enterochelin-producing Salmonella paratyphi B could grow on Fe from bovine, rabbit or human Tf. Furthermore, Fe could be obtained by the organism when the Tf's were isolated in a dialysis bag. A mutant which was unable to produce enterochelin could not obtain Fe from Tf.

Griffiths and Humphreys (1980) isolated enterochelin from peritoneal

washings of guinea pigs lethally infected with E. coli Olll demonstrating that siderophores are synthesized in vivo. In a subsequent study (Griffiths - et al., 1983), it was found that the Fe-repressible E. coli outer membrane proteins observed in vitro were also synthesized by E. coli in vivo when injected into guinea pigs. These results suggested that pathogens are Fe-limited in vivo.

Enteric bacteria have been shown to have another interesting high affinity Fe acquisition system. P. H. Williams (1979) found that E. coli harbouring the plasmid ColV were more virulent for laboratory animals than plasmid-minus strains. Strains without the plasmid were growth inhibited by Tf while the plasmid-containing strains were not inhibited These results suggested that ColV had a role in obtaining Fe from Tf. It was later found that the ColV plasmid contained the genes for the siderophore aerobactin (Warner et al., 1981; Braun, 1981). The aerobactin system actually consists of five contiguous genes, four for the synthesis of the siderophore and one for the 74,000. dalton receptor. Expression of the aerobactin genes has been found to be regulated by the fur (ferric uptake regulation) gene product, a 17,000 dalton protein. When Fe²⁺ is present intracellularly at a certain concentration it acts as a co-repressor with the Fur protein which binds to the operator of the aerobactin gene cluster to repress synthesis of aerobactin and its outer membrane receptor protein-(Neilands, 1987).

E. coli strains may have the ability to synthesize both enterochelin and aerobactin; as enterochelin has a K_f of 10^{52} and aerobactin has a K_f of 10^{23} it might be asked why both systems would be required. Konopka *et al.* (1982) demonstrated that both enterochelin and aerobactin could remove Fe

from Tf and aerobactin did so less efficiently than enterochelin in media. In serum however, aerobactin transferred Fe to E. coli at a higher rate than did enterochelin. It has also been pointed out (Finkelstein *et al.*, 1983) that different siderophore systems might be active in different environments. Enterochelin is sensitive to oxidation and changes in pH while aerobactin is active over a wide range of environmental conditions.

Whether a pathogen obtains Fe in vivo depends on the number of molecules of siderophore produced and on the Fe saturation of Tf. This was illustrated in a study by Kochan *et al.* (1971) in which the number of generations, of growth of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in tuberculostatic serum and tuberculostatic serum with 5 mg ml⁻¹ 100% saturated Tf or 5 mg ml⁻¹ apo-Tf to which various concentrations of the Fe chelator mycobactin had been added. It was found that it required approximately 1 mg of mycobactin ml⁻¹ to achieve eight generations of growth in tuberculostatic serum containing 100% saturated Tf while it required 100 mg ml⁻¹ mycobactin for six . Generations of division in tuberculostatic serum. One thousand ng ml⁻¹ mycobactin were required for approximately five generations of growth in tuberculostatic serum to which 5 mg ml⁻¹ apo-Tf had been added.

In section 2.2 Fe acquisition by Neisseria meningitidis was discussed. This organism does not produce siderophores but can obtain Fe from Tf by binding the protein directly Herrington and Sparling (1985) studying Haemophilus influenzae found that when cultured on media containing protoporphyrin IX and EDDA all of 33 H. influenzae type b isolates were able to grow on 30% Fe-saturated Tf but not on Lf. Twenty-eight of 35 nontypeable H. influenzae isolates examined could use Tf Fe but none of the H. parainfluenzae strains could use Tf Fe. Redhead et al. (1987) recently

demonstrated that Bordetella pertussis could utilize Fe from ovoTf (conalbumin) Lf and Tf with no evidence of siderophore production. Fuge thermore, radiolabelled protein binding studies indicated that the proteins were bound directly to the cells as was found for Tf utilization by N. meningitidis.

2.9.2 Eucaryotic cells and transferrin receptors

2.9.2.1 Properties of transferrin receptors

In 1959 Jandl *et al.* postulated that reticulocytes obtain Fe from T& because they express receptors for Tf on their cell membrane. The first Tf receptor isolated and characterized was from rabbit reticulocytes (Ecarot-Charrier *et al.*, 1977). Tf receptors were subsequently isolated from human placenta (Seligman *et al.*, 1979; Wada *et al.*, 1979). Two classifications of membrane receptors have been described: class I and class II. When ligands such as insulin bind to class 1 receptors information is transmitted to the cell causing modification of cell behavior or metabolism. Effects of ligand binding may be mediated through *a* second messenger such as cyclic AMP. Class II receptors transport ligands such as nutrients into the cell (Kaplan, 1981). The Tf receptor is an example of a class II receptor.

The Tf receptor is a transmembrane glycoprotein which has a molecular weight of 180,000 daltons consisting of two disulfide-bonded subunits each of 90,000 daltons (Seligman *et al.*, 1979; Wada *et al.*, 1979; Hamilton *et al.*, 1979; Omary *et al.*, 1980; Shindelman *et al.*, 1981; Sutherland *et al.*,

1981). Each subunit can bind one molecule of Tf. The human Tf receptor is 4.8% carbohydrate by weight (Seligman et al., 1979) and has at least 3 Nasparagine-linked oligosaccharide chains of both high mannose and complex types (Omary and Trowbridge, 1981). The mature receptor has a covalentlylinked palmitic acid molecule located close to the plasma membrane which may have a role in anchoring the receptor into the membrane (Omary and Trowbridge, 1981a) or in insertion of the receptor into the membrane (Koch and Hammerling, 1986) The external portion of the receptor is 70,000 daltons (Omary and Trowbridge, 1981a) while the intracellular part exposed to the cytoplasm is believed to be 5,000 daltons. In some cells, serine residues in this region of the molecule are phosphorylated (Schneider et al., 1982). Schneider et al. (1984) and McClelland et al. (1984) determined the primary structure of the human Tf receptor from the m-RNA sequence and from a cDNA clone respectively. The receptor is a peptide of 760 amino acids which is unusual in not having an N-terminal signal pep-It does have a membrane-spanning region 62 amino acids from the Ntide. terminus. The molecule has a short N-terminal cytoplasmic domain and an extracellular C-terminal domain of 672 amino acids. The gene for the Tf receptor is located on chromosome 3 (Enns et al., 1982) on the region 3q12 qter (van de Rijn et al., 1983). In order to study Tf receptor gene regulation, Miskimins et al. (1986) subcloned and sequenced a 365-bp fragment from the 5' region of the human Tf receptor. This region possessed a TATA box, several GC-rich regions and was able to promote the bacterial chloramphenicol acetyltransferase gene system. Several high molecular weight proteins which bind to the Tf receptor gene promoter were discovered. Also the promoter region was found to contain protein binding

sites, one of which is thought to interact with Spl, the cell transcription factor which has been shown to enhance transcription in vitro. Interestingly, the Tf receptor gene promoter demonstrated sequence homology to other gene promoters and it was suggested that the gene structure may allow constitutive low level gene expression but permit increased expression during the transition from the quiescent state to active growth

The exact binding site where Tf binds to its receptor has not been located; however, Bost *et al.* (1985) wrote out m-RNA sequences complementary to the m-RNA sequences for the Tf receptor and compared them with m-RNA sequences for Tf. Significant amino acid and nucleotide homologies between Tf and Tf receptor complements were observed. It was suggested that these homologous sequences may represent the region where ligand and receptor interact.

It has been suggested that Tf receptors might be involved in natural killer (NK) cell recognition of target cells. NK cells are lymphocytes which spontaneously lyse tumor cells, hemopoietic stem cells, fetal thymus cells and virus-infected cells. As Tf receptors are associated with actively dividing cells they have been implicated in NK cell recognition. Baines et al. (1983) found that 100%-saturated Tf at physiological levels inhibited NK activity. Optimal inhibition occurred when the tumor target cells were pre-incubated with Fe-Tf. If target cells were pre-incubated with Fe-Tf before the NK assay, inhibition of effector-target cell conjugate formation occurred. Furthermore, if the effector cells were incubated with rabbit anti-human Tf antibody there was inhibition of target cell killing. From this data the following model was proposed. NK cells have Tf receptors which have Tf bound to them. In

Ъ.

vitro grown tumor cells have high numbers of Tf receptors. Tumor cell Tf receptors bind to the Tf bound to NK cells and lysis of the target cells follows conjugate formation. Studies by Vodinelich et al. (1983) also indicated that Tf receptors may have target function for NK cells. These authors found a relationship between NK sensitivity of human leukemia cell lines and the proportion of cells expressing Tf receptors. It was also ' shown that tryptic fragments of Tf receptors inhibited NK activity to target cells." Lazarus and Baines (1985) studied the correlation between Tf receptor expression and NK susceptibility. K562 cells were assayed for numbers of Tf receptors on days 1,3 and 5 of growth and were also assessed for NK lysis susceptibility. These cells displayed the highest number of If receptors on day 1 and the lowest number on day 5. This correlated well with the ability of these cells to compete with control K562 cells in NK assays. A good correlation was also found between Tf receptor numbers and NK susceptibility when K562 cells were treated with heat, trypsin, or sodium butyrate, a differentiation-inducing agent. Rabbit reticulocytes which possess high numbers of Tf receptors competed well with K562 cells in NK assays while rabbit erythrocytes, which lack Tf receptors, did not. These results further suggest that Tf receptors are involved in NK recognition of tumor cells.

2.9.2.2 Occurrence of transferrin receptors

As mentioned above, Tf receptors were first studied in erythroid and placental cells. Since that time Tf receptors have been examined on many different types of cells and tissues. This has generally been done either

through the use of fluorescent antibody techniques or by incubating cells with varying amounts of radiolabelled Tf at 4° or 37° C and performing Scatchard (1949) analysis to determine receptor numbers and receptor-ligand affinity (K_a) or the dissociation constant (K_d).

Van Bockxmeer and Morgan (1977) found that a Lf binding component was present on rabbit reticulocytes but not on mature erythrocytes. Generally, If receptors are expressed on immature erythroid cells from pronormoblasts to reticulocytes and are absent from erythrocytes. Larrick and Cresswell (1979) found Tf receptors on human B and T lymphoblastoid cell lines. In another study, Tf binding to lymphoblastoid cell lines in log phase and in cells approaching stationary phase was measured (Larrick and Cresswell, 1979a). In the latter growth phase a down regulation of Tf receptors was Normal lymphocytes stimulated mitogenically or during a mixed observed. lymphocyte culture had an increased number of Tf binding sites compared to resting lymphocytes. It was concluded that the number of cellular Tf binding sites is modulated by cellular growth, rapidly dividing cells having mathy Tf binding sites. Omary et al. (1980) and Frowbridge and Omary (1981) using the monoclonal antibody B3/25 to the Tf receptor found Tf receptors on cultured T-leukemic cell lines, several normal and malignant B-cell lines and several non-B, non-T cell lines. These receptors were not found on peripheral blood mononuclear cells, granulocytes, thymocytes or bone The antigen was expressed on non-induced HL-60 cells, a marrow cells. promyelocytic cell line, but expression of the antigen was reduced if the cells were treated with dimethylsulfoxide or sodium butyrate, agents which cause differentiation and growth arrest. The disappearance of the membrane antigen preceded the arrest of HL-60 cells in G_1 phase of the cell

Thus Tf receptors appeared to be expressed on actively proliferatcycle. ing cells and to be present in larger amounts on malignant cells than on non-malignant cells. Sutherland et al. (1981) performed similar studies with another monoclonal antibody to the Tf receptor, OKT9, which bound to many different leukemia and tumor cell lines. The antibody did not bind to normal lymphocytes or erythrocytes but did bind to lymphocytes stimulated by mitogens. If cells were induced to mature, differentiate and leave the cell cycle binding of the antibody was reduced. As in the papers discussed above, the presence of the Tf receptor was correlated with proliferation. It has also been found that treatment of Friend erythroleukemia cells with dimethylsulfoxide results in an induction of Tf receptors, hemoglobin synthesis and erythroid differentiation (Wilczynska and Schulman, 1980; Wilczynska et al., 1984). The effect of dimethylsulfoxide on cellular .Tf receptor expression appears to vary with cell type.

R

Trowbridge et al. (1982) looked for the presence of Tf receivers in " murine cells and tissues. These receptors were detectable in all of 29 murine hematopoietic tumor cells lines but only in 5% of bone marrow cells and less than 1% of adult thymocytes and spleen cells. The murine Tf receptor was also shown to be a disulfide-bonded dimer of molecular weight similar to the human receptor. The murine Tf receptor was purified from murine myeloma cells by Van Driel et al. (1984). On a sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel under reducing conditions 2 bands of molecular weights 94,000 and 96,000 were observed. In a later study, (Van Driel and Goding, 1985) these 2 bands were found to correspond to receptor molecules with different numbers of N-linked oligosaccharides. In a subsequent study, Stearne et al., (1985) reported the cloning of cDNA encoding the

murine Tf receptor. cDNA clones from the murine myeloma cells were isolated and partially sequenced. It was determined that receptor regions surrounding the membrane were highly conserved when compared to sequences in the human Tf receptor. It was noted that three-quarters of the cysteine residues were conserved; these may be involved in interchain disulfide bonding or covalent attachment of fatty acid residues. Finally, the results of these authors suggest that the murine receptor is a homodimer.

Faulk et al. (1980) using fluorescent antibody techniques examined normal and malignant breast tissue for the presence of Tf and Tf receptors. It was found that '16/22 breast carcinomas were positive for Tf whereas none of the normal breast tissue samples or benign mastopathies were positive. SimiIarly, Shindelman et al. (1981) found elevated binding of Tf to microsomes of malignant breast tissue as compared to non-neoplastic breast Gatter et al. (1983) examined normal and malignant tissues for the tissue. presence of Tf receptors. Tf receptors were found in most of the carcinomas examined, all of the sarcomas and all of the tissue samples from patients with Hodgkin's disease. If receptors in normal tissues were found only in certain sites: basal epidermis, endocrine pancreas, hepatocytes, Kupffer cells, testis and pituitary. The authors point out that several of these normal tissue sites are sites of potential Fe deposition in primary hemochromatosis. In a study by Yeh et al. (1984) it was found that Tf receptors were more prominent on peripheral blood monocytes from patients with lymphoma, myeloma or leukemia than on similar cells from normal controls. The authors suggested that measurement of Tf binding by such cells \langle might be of diagnostic or prognostic value. These many studies cited above demonstrated an important point, that Tf receptors were prominent on

proliferating cells including malignant cells and much less evident on differentiated, resting or non-growing cells.

Stein and Sussman (1983) performed peptide mapping studies of the human Tf receptor from lymphocytes, human cell kines and placental tissue. It was determined that all cell types, normal or malignant, yielded identical peptide maps.

2.9.2.3 The intracellular transferrin cycle

Until relatively recently, although it was known that cells required Fe for growth and that this was obtained from Tf which bound to specific membrane' receptors, the actual mechanism of Fe' acquisition was uncertain. It was suggested (Octave et al., 1981) that Fe could be obtained from Tf in Firstly, Tf could bind to the plasma membrane, two ways. release, Fe at the membrane and then Fe could be transported via an intracellular molecule to sites in the cell which need it. The Fe could be separated from Tf by chelation, protonation, displacement of the bicarbonate anion, or by some reductive mechanism. The second proposal was that If could bind to membrane receptor sites and p internalized by endocytosis within a Fe could be removed intracellularly, perhaps in the acidic vesicle. lysosomes, and Tf could recycle to the plasma membrane and be released.

Hemmaplardh and Morgan (1977) using electron microscopy, autoradiography and ¹²⁵I-labelled Tf and Tf conjugated to ferritin or horseradish peroxidase demonstrated that rabbit reticulocytes take up Tf by endocytosis. When cells were incubated at 4° C, Tf was seen at the periphery of cells only; when cells were incubated at 37° C Tf was seen within the

cells. Larrick and Cresswell (1979) studying Tf binding to T and B lymphoblastoid cells at 37° C found that Tf binding was reversible, saturable and specific for Tf as only Tf could displace bound Tf. Larrick and Cresswell made a further important observation that 25 times as much apo-Tf as diferric Tf was required to give 50% inhibition of binding. Binding was inhibited by KCN and colchicine and decreased if cells were treated with trypsin or papain but not reduced if cells were treated with neuraminidase. Karin and Mintz (1981) using mouse teratocarcinoma cells demonstrated that at 4° C Tf binds to cells and at 37° C there is both binding and internalization of Tf. Fe was retained by the cells and apo-Tf released into the medium. Uptake was shown to be an energy-requiring process and Fe uptake was inhibited by the lysosomotropic agents NH₄Cl and chloroquine.

46

Since these early studies, much information has been obtained to elucidate the eucaryotic cellular Fe uptake system. It is now firmly established that Tf-Fe is taken up by receptor-mediated endocytosis (Karin and Mintz, 1981; Klausner *et al.*, 1983; Hopkins and Trowbridge, 1983; Harding *et al.*, 1983) a process by which other molecules including low density lipoprotein, insulin, and epidermal growth factor are also taken up.

Fe-bearing Tf has a high affinity for its receptor at a neutral extracellular pH (Dautry-Varsat *et al.*, 1983; Klausner *et al.*, 1983a) and binding takes place. Tf-receptor complexes cluster in membrane regions called coated pits. Coated pits are membrane invaginations which are covered on the cytoplasmic side by the protein clathrin. Clathrin is composed of three-armed complexes, triskelions, which consist of 180,000 dalton heavy chains and 35,000 dalton light chains. Coated pits invaginate

Ÿ,

forming coated vesicles. These vesicles subsequently shed their clathrin coat and fuse with acidic endosomes which have a nH of 5.0-5.5 (Tycko and Fe is removed from Tf in these non-lysosomal acidic Maxfield, 1982). yesicles (Van Renswoude et al , 1982; Lamb et al., 1983) but apo-Tf remains bound to the receptor **a**s at low pH apo-Tf has high receptor affinity (Ecarot-Charrier et al., 1977; 1980, Dautry-Varsat et al., 1983; Klausner Endosomes become acidic as protons are transported from et al., 1983a), the cytoplasm into the vesicles due to ATP-driven proton pumps (Galloway et al., 1983). Apo-Tf and the receptor are recycled to the cell surface and as apo-Tf is[?] exposed to a neutral extracellular environment in which it has low affinity for the receptor it quickly dissociates from the receptor. Ciechanover et al (1983) demonstrated using HepG2 human hepatoma cells that this cycle takes an average of 15.8 min and the cycle has been estimated to be completed in three min in rabbit reticulocytes (lacopetta and Morgan, 1983). It is not known after Fe is released from Tf in the endosome how it is incorporated into heme, ferritin or other proteins. existence of low molecular weight intracellular Fe carriers has been suggested (Jacobs, 1977) but none have been isolated.

Several authors have found (Klausner *et al.*, 1983; Lamb *et al.*, 1983; Ciechanover *et al.*, 1983) that cells as well as possessing surface Tf receptors have a pool of internal Tf receptors which may represent 70-80% of total cellular receptors. When cells are incubated with Tf at 37° C this receptor population may be cycled to the surface of the cells and bind [%] T(.

The If cycle has been elucidated by both biochemical (Octave et al., 1981; Karin and Mintz, 1981; Van Renswoude et al., 1982; Lamb et al., 1983;

Dautry-Varsat *et al.*, 1983; Klausner *et al.*, 1983, 4983a) and electron microscopy studies. For example, Harding *et al.* (1983) conjugated Tf to gold particles and followed the endocytic cycle in rat reticulocytes. After 5 min incubation of the cells at 37° gold-Tf particles were seen in coated pits and vesicles, inside small uncoated vesicles of varying size and inside tubular elements. After about 20 min the particles were seen in multivesicular endosomes. Intracellular Tf was not found to be associated with a lysosomal compartment Finally, gold-conjugated Tf was released from the cell. Hopkins and Trowbridge (1983) studied Tf endocytosis by conjugating a monoclonal antibody to the Tf receptor to gold particles and following the intracellular endocytic cycle of the Tf receptor in human epidermoid carcinoma cells.

2.9.2.4 Regulation of transferrin receptor expression

Cells can regulate Fe uptake to a certain extent by modulation of Tf receptor expression. As discussed above, receptor numbers are related to state of activation or differentiation. Receptor numbers also vary with the phase of the cell cycle; numbers are low in G_1 and increase in S and G_2 + M. Receptor numbers therefore increase prior to DNA synthesis It has been suggested that the number of cellular Tf receptors expressed is modulated by the concentration of intracellular heme (Ward *et al.*, 1984) or by a pool of intracellular chelatable Fe (Bottomley *et al.*, 1985). If cells are incubated with Fe chelators such as picolinic acid (Louache *et al.*, 1984; 1985) or desferrioxamine (Mattia *et al.*, 1984; Rao *et al.*, 1985) there is an increase in the number of Tf receptors expressed. Bomford *et*

al. (1986) suggested that desferrioxamine may increase Tf receptor expression by chelating an intracellular regulatory pool of Fe or by arresting cells in the S phase of the cell cycle when receptors are maximally expressed. Conversely, if cells are incubated with Fe salts (Ward *et al.*, 1982; Louache *et al.*, 1984; 1985; Rao *et al.*, 1985) or hemin (Louache, 1984) the number of cellular receptors decreases. These effects are directly due to an increase and a decrease respectively in receptor biosynthesis. Rouault *et al.* (1985) demonstrated by competition experiments that hemin and desferrioxamine affect the same intracellular pool of Fe. Because desferrioxamine cannot remove Fe from hemin it was suggested that hemin takes Fe to a chelatable pool and it is the level of Fe in this pool that regulates the expression of the Tf receptor gene.

Louache et al. (1985) found that in human erythroleukemia cells ac-, tinomycin D inhibited the effects of Fe salts or chelators on receptor biosynthesis but did not affect enhancement of cellular ferritin synthesis caused by Fe salts. It was suggested that in these cells Fe modulates the syntheses of Tf receptors and cellular ferritin at the levels of transcription and translation respectively.

May et al. (1984)' reported that treatment of HL-60 human promyelocytic leukemia cells with phorbol diesters 'resulted in translocation of Tf receptors from the cell surface into the cell. This receptor internalization was associated with increased phosphorylation of the Tf receptor. Klausner et al. (1984) observed that both the binding of Tf and phorbol diesters led to internalization of Tf receptors in K562 cells. They proposed that ligand binding triggers internalization and since phorbol ester treatment of cells led to an increase in Tf receptor phosphorylation it was suggested

that phosphorylation of the Tf receptor was the signal for internalization. It remained to be determined whether ligand binding caused receptor phos-In a subsequent study by May et al (1985) it was proposed phorylation that phorbol diesters stimulate protein kinase C which phosphorylate serine residue on the Tf receptor. The Tf receptor is then internalized via a colchicine-sensitive pathway i.e one which involves microtubules. In contrast to these findings, Alcantara et af. (1986) studying lymphoblastoid cells found that phorbol diesters caused T f receptor down regulation by a cytoskeleton-independent mechanism, whereas If caused down regulation of receptors via a cytoskeleton-dependent mechanism. These differing results suggest that there are different mechanisms for Tf receptor regulation in different types of cells. In 1986, Davis et al, using A431 human epidermoid carcinoma cells determined that phorbol diesters caused phosphorylation of the Tf receptor by protein kinase 🕻 and serine residue 24 was the site of phosphorylation However, the significance of the phosphorylation of the Tf receptor is not clear; it is not known if this does trigger internalization as it has also been reported that Tf receptors are internalized in the absence of bound ligand (Watts, 1985). Rothenberger et al. (1987) recently reported results of studies on the importance of the cytoplasmic domain and phosphorylation sites on Tf internalization Sitedirected mutagenesis was used to obtain human Tf receptor cDNA's with a deletion of 36 of 65 amino acids of the cytoplasmic domain of the Tf receptor or to obtain point mutations of five cytoplasmic serine residues which could be phosphorylation sites. When the cDNA's were transfected into mouse L cells it was found that the deletion mutant receptor could not carry out endocytosis. In lines in which an alanine residue was sub-

stituted for serine 24 although there was no phosphorylation the receptors were still able to internalize Tf as efficiently as wild type receptors. These results indicate that all or part of the cytoplasmic domain of the Tf receptor is important for endocytosis but suggest that phosphorylation of the receptor is not necessary.

May and Cuatreca'sas (1985) pointed out that in mitogenicallystimulated lymphocytes there is a sequential induction of the expression of interleukin-2 receptors, then Tf receptors and in a model originally proposed by Neckers (1984), transformed cells no longer have this sequential control of proliferation as they demonstrate constitutive expression of Tf receptors. This may partially explain the continued growth of malignant cells. This hypothesis suggests that Tf and its receptor have other growth-regulating properties in addition to Fe donation (May and Cuatrecasas, 1985). These authors further add that Tf binding may cause cellular signals such as production of a second messenger. Activation of a protein kinase and subsequent receptor phosphorylation may be important in this regard. This idea is interesting as other growth factor receptors such as epidermal growth factor and insulin have protein kinase activity and various oncogenes of transformed cells code for protein kinases.

2.10 Summary

£.,

The mammalian Fe cycle is a well-regulated and dynamic mechanism consisting of several integrated constituents including: the central transport component, Tf, hemoglobin of erythrocytes, the storage protein ferritin and the ferroxidase coruloplasmin. Several changes occur in the

host Fe cycle during both infection and neoplastic disease. One important change is the reduction in the amount of Fe bound to Tf a process beneficial in limiting microbial Fe acquisition especially in the case of murine *Neisseria meningitidis* infection. Both pathogenic bacteria and tumor cells must obtain host Fe to proliferate. *N. meningitidis* is unusual in that it can obtain Fe by binding Tf directly as do tumor cells by expression of specific membrane Tf receptors. The meningococcal Tf receptor has not been characterized but the eucaryotic Tf receptor has been studied extensively as has the endocytic Tf cycle and the regulation of Tf receptor expression.

The purpose of this work was to study Fe acquisition in neoplastic cells using a murine ascites lymphoma model, in particular, to study the ability of the hypoferremic response to limit Fe acquisition by the lymphoma cells. Fe growth requirements by these cells was examined as was the lymphoma Tf-receptor binding specificity. Finally, Tf binding by neisserial and lymphoma cells was compared to discover the reason for the difference in the response of *N. meningitidis* and tumor cells to hypoferremia even though both cell types are capable of binding Tf directly.
3. MATERIALS AND METHODS

3.1 Mice

The mice used in this study were C57BL/6 males obtained from the Animal Resources Division, Health and Welfare, Ottawa, Canada or from Charles River Breeding Laboratories Inc., St. Constant, Quebec, Canada. They received feed (Purina Rat Chow) and water *ad libitum*. For experiments investigating the hypoferremic response; mice were 6-8 weeks of age and weighed 18-25 g at the outset of experiments.

3.2 Tumor cells

The tumor cell line used for *in vivo* studies was the EL4 lymphoma (ATCC TIB 39) line (originally a benzo(a)pyrene induced lymphoma) from C57 black mice. These cells were maintained by growing them alternately *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Mice were inoculated intraperitoneally (i.p.) with 1 X 10^5 tumor cells. Ten to fourteen days later, cells were removed and cultured for 48 h *in vitro*. Initially, cells were cultured in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's Medium (Flow Laboratories, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada) but subsequently were cultured only in RPMI 1640 (RPMI, GIBCO Laboratories, Grand Island, U.S.A.) which contained no added iron salts. RPMI contained 10 mM HEPES buffer, 100 units ml⁻¹ penicillin, 100 ug ml⁻¹ streptomycin, 2 mM glutamine and 10% fetal bovine serum (F.B.S., Flow Laboratories). Cells were incubated at 37° C in a humidified atmosphere with 5% CO₂.

A subline of the original EL4 cell line was derived by culturing the original EL4 cells in RPMI supplemented with human transferrin (Tf, Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, Missouri, U.S.A) only. Continued passage of these cells in this medium gave rise to a subline which grew well in vivo and in vitro. This subline was designated EL4-1.

For one study, two other murine tumor cell lines were used: YAC-1, a Moloney virus induced lymphoma of A strain mice and P815, a methylcholanthrene induced mastocytoma of DBA/2 mice. These cells were obtained from the laboratory of Dr. M. G. Baines, Department of Microbiology and Immunology, McGill University. These two cell lines were maintained *in vitro* only in RPMI with 10% F.B.S.

For studies in which bone marrow cells were used, bone marrow cells were obtained aseptically from the femurs of C57 black mice by flushing the bone marrow cavity cells into sterile Dulbecco's phosphate buffered saline (PBS), pH 7.3, using a 23 gauge needle and a 1-ml syringe. A homogeneous cell suspension was obtained by resuspending the cells in PBS using a sterile pasteur pipette. Cells were then centrifuged (10 min, 300 X g, 20° C) and washed once in sterile PBS.

3.3 In vivo experiments

3.3.1 Measuring the hypoferremic response

In order to determine the appropriate inoculum of tumor cells for experiments, ten-fold dilutions of the EL4 cells were made in RPMI and groups of mice (5 per group) were injected i.p. with from 10⁷ to 10 tumor

These mice were observed for development of tumors and survival cells. All mice injected with 10^3 to 10^7 tumor cells subsequently died, time. time to death being directly related to inoculum size. Sixty percent of mice injected with 10² tumor cells died. The remaining mice were alive and rapparently healthy 4 months post inoculation Therefore, to ensure that all mice would develop tumors, 10⁴ cells per mouse was chosen as the inoculum and used as follows. EL4 cells were removed from a mouse inoculated 10 days previously and diluted to 2 X 10^4 cells ml⁻¹ in RPMI., Groups of mice were injected i.p. with 1 \times 10⁴ cells and at designated times, mice were sacrificed and tumor cells were removed by peritoneal lavage with 2 ml of RPMI and counted in a hemacytometer using trypan blue exclusion as a measure of cell viability. For determination of hematocrit, groups of 4 mice were bled from the tail into heparinized capillary tubes. These same 4 mice were then bled completely by cardiac puncture into 3 ml Vacutainer tubes (Becton Dickinson, Montreal, Quebec, Canada) for serum iron (Fe) The blood was allowed to clot at room temperature for 30 determination. min then refrigerated for 8 h. The serum was obtained by centrifugation (5 min, 15,000 X g, 20° C). Serum samples from 2 mice were pooled and serum total iron binding capacity (TIBC), unsaturated iron binding capacity (UIBC) and Tf Fe were determined using an ⁵⁹Fe radioassay kit (Becton Dickinson). This assay kit measures only Fe specifically bound to Tf it does not measure hemoglobin Fe or Fe present due to hemolyzed blood; the principles of the kit are described in Appendix I.

These same serum samples were used to perform ceruloplasmin (Cp) assays using the method of Ravin (1961). For the Cp assay the reaction mixture contained: 20 ul serum, 1.6 ml 0.4 M sodium acetate buffer pH 5.5,

. 55

and 200 ul 0.5% (w/v) para-phenylenediamine. The mixture was incubated at 37° C for 60 min when the reaction was terminated by the addition of 200 ul 0.5% (w/v) sodium azide at 4° C. The absorbance at 530 nm was then recorded.

Just prior to sacrifice, mice were weighed to determine total body weight and after sacrifice the weights of the liver, spleen and thymus were recorded. Control mice were injected at zero time with 0.5 ml saline (0.85% \tilde{w}/v NaCl) instead of tumor cells. Control mice were also weighed and bled to monitor hematocrit, serum Fe and Cp.

3.3.2 Assessment of the effect of transferrin Fe administration on tumor cell growth

To determine whether addition of Tf Fe enhanced tumor cell growth in vivo, mice were inoculated with EL4 cells as above and subsequently injected i.p. with 2 mg of 100% Fe-saturated Tf (2.8 ug Fe) on days 9, 11, 13, and 15 post tumor cell inoculation. Control mice were injected with saline instead of Tf. The preparation of Tf is detailed in section 3.5.1. Tumor cell growth rate was monitored as described in section 3.3.1 above.

3.3.3 Assessment of the effect of desferrioxamine on tumor cell growth

In an attempt to inhibit *in vivo* tumor cell growth by Fe deprivation, mice were injected i.p. with 1 X 10⁴ tumor cells and then with 5 mg of the Fe chelator desferrioxamine (desferrioxamine methane sulfonate, Ciba-Geigy, Dorval, Quebec, Canada) in 0.5 ml PBS. Control mice were injected with tumor cells and PBS. Mice were re-injected with desferrioxamine or PBS on days 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, and 12. On day 12 the desferrioxamine-treated group was divided into 2 groups: one group was given no further desferrioxamine treatment: the other was given further injections of desferrioxamine on days 14, 16, and 18 post tumor cell inoculation. Tumor cell growth was assessed at appropriate times.

3.3.4 Assessment of the effect of inflammation-induced hypoferremia on tumor cell growth

In order to create a model of hypoferremia in mice, turpentine was used as a sterile inflammatory agent. Mice were lightly anaesthetized with ether and injected subcutaneously in the back with 0.05 ml oil of turpentine (Fisher Scientific Co.) at 2 separate sites. To measure TIBC, UIBC, serum Fe and Cp levels, groups of 6 mice were bled by cardiac puncture at 0, 6, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 60, and 72 h as described in Section 3.3.1. Control mice were treated similarly but injected with saline only. In a later study, to assess the effects of an early hypoferremia on tumor growth, mice were injected with either saline or turpentine as above and then with 10^4 tumor cells one h later. Mice were bled to assess serum Fe levels at 0, 12, 24, 48 and 72 h and after 6, 8, 11, 14, 16 and 18 days. Four mice from each group were sacrificed at each time point. At the 6 latter time points tumor cell numbers were evaluated as well.

3.4 In vitro growth experiments

3.4.1 Cell culture preparation

EL4-1 cells were used for the majority of all in vitro growth experi-These cells were removed from a mouse inoculated 10-14 days prements. viously into RPMI and centrifuged (5 min, 270 x g, 20° C). Red blood cells present were then lysed by the addition of sterile distilled water for 15 seconds. An equivalent volume of 2 times concentrated RPMI was ${f \sharp}$ added to the cell suspension. Cells were washed twice in RPMI and finally incubated in RPMI with 0.3 uM '50% Fe-saturated human Tf for 48 h. The tumor cells were then washed and incubated in RPMI with no added Fe or Tf for 24 h to deplete the cells of endogenous Fe. Cells were, centrifuged (5 min, 270 X g, 20° C), washed once in RPMI and inoculated into 10 ml RPMI in 30 ml tissue culture flasks containing various Fe sources. Initial cell numbers were 1 X 10^5 ml⁻¹ (except for one set of experiments in which initial cell numbers were 1 X 10^4 cells ml⁻¹) and growth was assessed by performing daily cell counts in a hemacytometer using trypan blue exclusion. Initial growth experiments were performed in RPMI which was found to con $tain 0.019 + - 0.009 \text{ ug ml}^{-1}$ Fe (0.33 + - 0.16 uM) as measured using a --Perkin Elmer 703 atomic absorption spectrophotometer using the HGA-2200 graphite furnace and D₂ background correction. In subsequent experiments, to ensure that this low level of contaminating Fe did not alter the Tf Fe saturation during growth or uptake experiments, RPMI was deferrated by incubating the medium for approximately 20 h $(37^{\circ} C, 5 \approx CO_2)$ with a two-fold molar excess of human apo-Tf. The medium was then filtered through a PM-10

Amicon filter (10,000 dalton exclusion limit) to remove the Tf. and bound Fe. This medium was then designated Fe-extracted RPMI. Sources of Fe used in growth experiments included: human Tf, bovine Tf, murine Tf, conalbumin, lactoferrin (Lf), bovine hemoglobin, horse spleen ferritin and ferrous ammonium sulfate and all were obtained from Sigma Chemical Co. except murine Tf (Daymar Laboratories, Toronto, Ontario, Canada).

3/4.2 Fe uptake by the tumor cells

EL4-1 cells were removed from the peritoneum of a mouse following in vivo passage. After lysis of red blood cells and washing, cells were inoculated into Fe-extracted RPMI containing 0.3 uM 50% Fe-saturated human Tf at an initial density of 1 X 10^5 cells ml⁻¹. These cells were maintained in this medium at an approximate concentration of 5 X 10^5 cells ml⁻¹ and used for uptake studies. For ⁵⁹Fe uptake studies, cells were washed once (5 min, 270 X g, 20° C) and inoculated into 10 ml Fe-extracted RPMI at a level of 1.5 X 10^6 ml⁻¹. At zero time, ⁵⁹Fe-Tf was added. Duplicate 1-ml samples were taken at 0, 1, 3 and 6 h. Cells were washed 3 times (2 min, 1430 X g, 20° C) in Fe-extracted RPMI. Supernatants, washes and pellets were counted in a Beckman 8000 gamma counter.

3.4.3 Transferrin binding experiments

All Tf binding experiments were performed at 4° C (except for time course studies which were carried out at both 4° C and 37° C) using 100% Fe-saturated human Tf. As described in section 3.4.2, cells were harvested

from mice and suspended in Fe-extracted RPMI. The red blood cells were lysed and cells were washed and inoculated into Fe-extracted RPMI containing 0.3 uM 100% Fe-saturated Tf at an initial level of 1 \times 10⁵ ml⁻¹. Cells were maintained as for uptake studies. Before a binding assay, cells were harvested, washed once (270 X g, 5 min, 20° C) then incubated for 90 min (37° C, 5% CO₂) in Fe-extracted RPMI to eliminate as much bound or internalized Tf as possible. Klausner *et al.* (1983) using K562 cells found that 50% of internalized Tf is released from the cells in the absence of added Tf. Tf release from the EL4-1 cells during this pre-incubation period was not measured in these studies. After incubation, cells were washed once (4° C) and used for binding assays.

3.4.3.1 Determination of receptor numbers

These assays were performed using a modification of the method of Lazarus and Baines (1985a). The wells of round-bottomed 96-well microtiter plates (Linbro, Flow Laboratories) were coated with a 10% (w/v) solution of bovine serum albumin (BSA, Sigma). One hundred ul of Fe-extracted RPMI containing 0.1% (w/v) BSA was added to all wells except the first well of a row in the microtiter plate. Ten ug of 125 I-labelled Tf in 200 ul of the above medium was added to the first well and serially diluted two-fold to well number 11. (After mixing the Tf in well 11, 100 ul was discarded.) Well 12 contained 100 ul media only. 1.5 X 10⁶ cells in 100 ul of media were added to all 12 wells at 4° C. Cells and Tf were mixed and incubated for 90 min (4° C). After incubation, cells were removed from the wells into microcentrifuge tubes containing 600 ul RPMI with 0.1% BSA. Wells were

rinsed with 200 ul of this medium and this was added to the corresponding microcentrifuge tube. Cells were washed 4 times and supernatants, washes and pellets were counted as for uptake studies except that all manipulations were carried out at 4° C. Cells from well 12 were treated as for the other wells except that they were not incubated with Tf and at the end of the experiment, cells were counted to detect any cell lysis during the experiment. Results were plotted according to the method of Scatchard (1949) using the method of Chamness and McGuire (1975) to correct for non-specific binding.

3.4.3.2 Time course binding and uptake assays

EL4-1 cells were prepared as for receptor assays. 1.5×10^6 cells were incubated with 0.5 ug ¹²⁵I-labelled diferric human Tf in 200 ul RPMI containing 0.1% BSA in wells of microtiter plates. Cells were incubated with the labelled ligand for 2, 5, 30, 60 and 90 min at 4° C and 37° C. Duplicate wells were run for each time point. Non-specific binding was assessed by including wells which contained radiolabelled ligand and a 100-fold excess of unlabelled diferric Tf. Non-specific binding was subtracted from specific binding. Cells were centrifuged, washed 3 times (2 min, 1430 X g) in Fe-extracted RPMI with 0.1% BSA and supernatants, washes and pellets were counted.

3.4.3.3 Competitive binding assays

These assays were performed on the original EL4, EL4-1, YAC-1, P815 and murine bone marrow cells. All cell lines were grown and prepared as outlined in sections 3.2 and 3.4.3 respectively. Cells at 4° C were added to control microtiter wells containing 0.5 ug 125 I-labelled human Tf and to test wells which contained labelled Tf and 0.5, 5.0 or 25 ug of un abelled competing ligands. Competing ligands included: human Tf, murine Tf, bovine Tf, human Lf and conalbumin prepared to 100% Fe-saturation. Binding was allowed to proceed for 60 min at 4° C then cells were harvested as described in 3.4.3.1. Duplicate wells were run for each condition tested. Non-specific binding was measured as outlined in 3.4.3.2.

3.5 Preparation of transferrin solutions

3.5.1 Preparation of 50% and 100% Fe-saturated unlabelled proteins

Human apo-Tf was loaded with Fe^{3+} to 50 or 100% saturation using ferric citrate (1:10 Fe:citrate ratio) prepared in 40 mM Tris (Trizma base, Sigma) 2 mM sodium bicarbonate buffer, pH 7.4. To achieve 50 and 100% saturation, 0.7 or 1.4 ug Fe mg⁻¹ protein respectively was provided. Preparations were stirred for 20 min at room temperature and then allowed to sit at this temperature for a further 20 min Fe-loaded proteins were then dialyzed (4° C) twice against Tris-bicarbonate buffer, pH 7 4, and once against 5 mM Tris in saline, pH 7.4. Bovine Tf, human Lf and conalbumin were prepared in a similar manner. Murine Tf was dialyzed twice

against 10 mM sodium citrate, pH 5.0, and twice against Tris-bicarbonate buffer, pH 7.4, loaded with Fe to the desired level of saturation then dialyzed as for human Tf. The Fe saturation of Tf's was verified by measuring the ratio of optical densities at 465/280 nm. One hundred per cent Fe-saturated Tf at a concentration of 2 mg ml⁻¹ gave an approximate ratio of Q.046 and this ratio for 50% Fe-saturated Tf was 0.023.

3.5.2 Preparation of ⁵⁹Fe-radiolabelled transferrin

Human apo-Tf was dissolved in 40 mM Tris, 2 mM bicarbonate buffer pH 7.4 and dialyzed overnight. Tf was ferrated from 59 Fe citrate by mixing acidic 59 FeCl₃ (New England Nuclear, Lachine, Quebec, Canada, specific activity 2-40 Ci g⁻¹ Fe) with 56 Fe ferrfc citrate in Tris bicarbonate buffer, pH 7.4. To load 4.5 mg Tf to 50% Fe saturation, 2.2 uCi 59 Fe ug⁻¹ total Fe was used. The apo-Tf was added to the 59 Fe citrate and stirred at room temperature for one h. The preparation was then dialyzed for 24 h against two changes of Tris-bicarbonate buffer, pH 7.4, and once against 5 mM Tris in saline, pH 7.4, to remove unbound Fe. Tf was loaded to 50% saturation by addition of 0.7 ug Fe mg⁻¹ protein. The specific activity was approximately 3.33 X 10^3 cgm ug⁻¹ protein.

3.5.3 Preparation of ¹²⁵I-radiolabelled transferrin

Iodinated Tf was prepared using the chloramine T method as described by Lazarus and Baines (1985a). Diferric Tf was prepared at a concentration of 25 mg ml⁻¹. Two hundred ul (5 mg) was transferred to a microcentrifuge

tube, 1 mCi ¹²⁵I (Amersham) in a 10 ul volume was added to the Tf. Chloramine T_{0} (100 ug in 10 ul) was then added to start the reaction which proceeded at room temperature for 15 min. The iodination was terminated with the addition of 125 ug of sodium metabisulfate in a 25 ul volume. The labelled Tf was then separated from unbound 125 I on a Sephadex G-25 (medium, dry bead diameter 50-150 um) column (Pharmacia Fine Chemicals, Uppsala, Sweden) equilibrated with PBS, pH 7.3. Fractions of 0.5 ml were collected and the fractions that were pink in colour were pooled. То determine the percentage of the label bound to the Tf a trickeroacetic acid precipitation was performed. Five ul of labelled protein was mixed with 200 ul 1% (w/v) BSA in PBS and 200 ul of 20% (w/v) trichloroacetic This mixture was centrifuged (10 min, 16,000 x g, 20° C). acid. An aliquot of the supernatant and the pellet were counted in a Beckman 8000 gamma counter and the percentage of label bound to the protein was deter-The labelled Tf was then dialyzed for 24 h mined. The concentration of . the label'led protein was -determined using the Bio-Rad protein assay (Bio-Rad dye reagent, Bio-Rad, Mississauga, Ontario, Ćanada) using diferric human Tf as the standard. Finally, the labelled protein was mixed with an equivalent volume of 2% (w/v) BSA, filter sterilized, dispensed into aliquots and stored at 4° C. ¹²⁵I-labelled human Tf was prepared to a specific activity of approximately 2 X 10^5 cpm ug⁻¹.

Deglycosylation of transferrin 3.5.4

N-glycanase was purchased from Genzyme Corp., Boston, Massachusetts, U.S.A. Human and murine Fe-Tf's were prepared to 100% Fe-saturation at a concentration of 2 mg ml⁻¹. The following were mixed aseptically: 55 ug human Tf or 5Q ug murine Tf, 30 ul 0 55 M sodium phosphate buffer pH 8.6, 8.4 ul 100 mM 1,10-phenanthroline hydrate and 20 ul N-glycanase (5 units) This mixture was incubated at 37° C in a water bath for 17 h. The volume of this mixture was diluted to 1.5 ml with sterile 5 mM Tris in saline, pH 7.4 and the mixture was dialyzed for 2 h at 4° C against the same sterile buffer. The deglycosylated protein was then aseptically dispensed in aliquots and immediately stored at -80° C. Sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) .was run on the native and deglycosylated proteins and stained using the silver staining method. The removal of carbohydrate was verified by a Western blotting procedure performed by Pardo Pannunzio of this department. Briefly, native and deglycosylated Tf's were run on SDS-PAGE, and blotted onto nitrocellulose This was subsequently treated with concanavalin A conjugated with paper. horseradish peroxidase. Competitive binding experiments were performed to compare the binding of native and deglycosylated proteins.

3.6

Preparation of bovine hemoglobin and ferritin

Bovine hemoglobin (0.34 g) was dissolved in 5 ml distilled water and dialyzed against citrate-phosphate buffer, pH 7.0 for 24 h then against distilled water. The solution was analyzed by atomic absorption spectrophotometry to determine the Fe concentration. Ferritin (horse spleen ferritin) was dialyzed overnight against 10 mM sodium citrate, pH 6.5 to remove any traces of cadmium which is used in the purification procedure. The Fe concentration of the solution was measured as for hemoglobin by atomic absorption spectrophotometry.

3.7 Detection of cransferrin on EL4 cells

Tumor cells were removed from mice between 12-18 days post inoculation into cold serum-free medium containing 0.02% sodium azide. To, these cells was added 0.1 ml of a 1:9 dilution of rabbit anti-mouse Tf $at 4^{\circ}$ C and. cells were incubated (4° C) for 30 min. The cells were washed 3 times with azide-containing medium at 4° C. Then 0.1 ml of a 1:9 dilution of fluorescein-labelled goat anti-rabbit globulin (GIBCO) was added to the cells which were subsequently incubated for 30 min in the dark at 4° C. Cells were then washed as before. Two drops of glycerol mounting fluid, pH 8.4, were added to the preparation. Cells were placed in a hemacytometer, observed and photographed under both ultra-violet (fluorescence) and bright field microscopy using a Leitz Dialux 20 EB microscope at a magnification of 400 Control cells were treated in a similar manner but normal rabbit serum was used instead of antiserum.

3.8 Characterization of cells

3.8.1 Determination of cellular Fe

The Fe content of the tumor cells was determined by atomic absorption spectrophotometry using the graphite furnace mode. Cells were homogenized in saline using a glass tissue homogenizer which had been pre-rinsed with 6 N HCl to remove any traces of Fe. Protein determinations were performed using the method of Lowry *et al.* (1951).

In order to detect heme in EL4 cells, homogenates, were scanned 'spectrophotometrically from 450 to 350 nm using a Perkin Elmer 555 UV-VIS spectrophotometer. Horse heart cytochrome c (Sigma, type III) was used as a standard and the heme was detected by its Soret peak absorption in the 405-420 nm region. For both Fe and heme analysis of in vivo grown cells, mice were bled completely from the 'retro-orbital sinus before the tumor cells were harvested. After tumor cells were removed, any contaminating red blood cells were lysed. The tumor cells were then washed twice, resuspended in saline, homogenized and assayed.

3.8.2 Respiration studies

Respiration studies were performed on EL4 cells grown both *in vitro* and *in vivo* using a Clark polarographic O_2 electrode. Assays were done on 3 ml samples in serum-free media containing 1 X 10⁶ cells ml⁻¹. Initial O_2 uptake rates were established by following uptake for 10 min then 10 ul of 300 mM potassium cyanide was added and O_2 uptake was monitored for an additional 20 min.

3.8.3 Glucose and lactic acid assays

The glucose concentration of spent Fe-extracted RPMI in which ÉL4-1 cells had been cultured with 0.3 uM 50% Fe-saturated human Tf for 72 h was measured by the phenol-sulfuric acid method of Dubois *et al.* (1956). Standards containing 20-100 ug glucose and samples containing control and spent RPMI were assayed. Sample volumes were made up to 1 ml with distilled water, 1 ml of 5% (w/v) phenol and 5 ml of concentrated H_2SO_4 (96%, reagent grade) were added. After 10 min, tubes were vortexed then incubated 15 min at 27° C in a water bath and the absorbance at 490 nm was read on a Pye-Unicam SP8-400 spectrophotometer.

Lactic actid in the spent culture supernatant was measured using the assay of Rosenberg and Rush (1966). 0.2 ml distilled water blanks, lactic "acid standards (prepared to contain 0.5-2 umol ml⁻¹ lactic acid, Sigma) or supernatants were mixed with 2.8 ml glycine-semicarbazide hydrochloride buffer, pH 10.0, and 0.6 ml NAD solution, pH 6.0, and the absorbance at 340 nm was read for all tubes Beef heart lactate dehydrogenase (Sigma) as diluted to a concentration of 2 mg protein ml⁻¹ and 0 4 ml was added to the tubes which were incubated one h at 37° C. After incubation, the absorbance at 340 nm was read again. [^]E was determined as E_2 -0.9 E_1 - B_2 -0.9 B_1 where E_1 and E_2 are the absorbance readings before and after the addition of enzyme and incubation respectively and B_1 and B_2 are the initial and final blank readings. A standard curve of [^]E was plotted from which the concentration of lactate in the supernatant was determined.

3.8.4 API ZYM enzyme assays

The enzyme assays on EL4-1 cells were performed using the API ZYM system from Analytab Products Division of Ayerst Laboratories Inc. A description of the API ZYM kit is found in Appendix II. EL4-1 cells were removed from the peritoneal cavity of a mouse and cultured *in vitro* in RPMI containing 75 nM 50% Fe-saturated human Tf. After 48 h, cells were washed and divided into two sets: one set was grown as described above, the other was grown in the absence of Tf or Fe for 40 h. Cells were washed in saline and resuspended in 3 ml saline at 7.6 X 10^6 cells ml⁻¹. The API ZYM strips were inoculated with Fe-sufficient and Fe-deprived cells and incubated at 37° C for 4 h. Reagents A and B, provided in the API kit, were added and the strips were read by comparing the colour reactions to those in the colour chart provided. The colour intensity was estimated on a scale from 0-5.

3.9

Sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE)

SDS TAKE gels were run to assess the purity of proteins and to look for a decrease in molecular weight due to deglycosylation of Tf. Gels were run in slabs of 1.5 mm thickness using the system of Laemmli (1970). Running gels were 12 cm in length and were 10% (w/v) acrytamide and 0.26% (w/v) bisacrylamide while the stacking gels were 4% (w/v) acrytamide and 0.11% (w/v) bisacrylamide. Gels were run at 25 mA and 35 mA for migration through the stacking and running gels respectively in a buffer system con-

sisting of 0.025 M Tris, pH 8.3, 0.19 M glycine and 0.1% (w/v) SDS. Samples were boiled for 5 min in sample buffer containing 0.08 M Tris, pH 6.8, with 2% (w/v) SDS, 10% (w/v) glycerol, 0.04% (w/v) bromophenol blue and 5% (v/v) beta-mercaptoethanol. Low molecular weight markers (Pharmacia Fine Chemicals) were run along with the proteins of interest. Cels were stained with Coomassie Blue R-250 (0.125% Coomassie Blue, 50% methanol, 10% acetic acid) overnight and then destained with a destaining solution of 50% _ "methanol, 10% acetic acid. Alternatively, gels were stained by the silver For the latter method, gels were fixed overnight in 5% staining method. trichloroacetic acid-5% sulfosalicylic acid and transferred to 5% methanol: 7% acetic acid: 88% deionized water for 3 h. Gels were then fixed for 30 min in 10% glutaraldehyde, rinsed, reduced with dithiothreitol, rinsed, stained with $AgNO_3$ (1 ml of a 20% (w/v) solution of $AgNO_3$ in 199 ml distilled water) for 30 min and rinsed with water. A Na2CO3 developer solution was added until the desired intensity of staining was achieved then staining was stopped by addition of citric acid.

3.10 Bacterial studies

3.10.1 Bacterial cultures

Neisseria meningitidis SDIC, a serogroup B strain, was obtained from the Neisseria Repository, NAMRU, School of Public Health, University of California, Berkeley. Neisseria subflava was the ATCC 10555 strain. The E. coli strain used was AB2463pDT1-2 which was obtained from D. Touati. Frozen stock cultures were prepared in Mueller-Hinton broth (MHB, Oxoid,

Basingstoke, England) containing 20% glycerol and stored at -80° C.

3.10.2 Culture conditions

Frozen cultures were thawed at 37° C and streaked on to MHA plates; MHA is MHB with the addition of 1.5% agar (Difco Laboratories, Detroit, Michigan). Plates were incubated at 37° C with 5% CO₂. After approximately 18 h a colony was subcultured to a new plate. To obtain working cultures for Tf binding experiments, 3 isolated colonies were inoculated into 20 ml MHB and incubated for 6 h at 37° C with shaking (100 rpm). This starter culture was used to inoculate a second MHB culture with a one percent (v/v) inoculum which was incubated for 16 h when cells were harvested (4,080 X g, 5 min, 4° C). At the time of harvest, celfs were examined using phase contrast microscopy, a TMPD oxidase test was performed and the optical density of the culture was recorded. Cells were washed once (5,900 X g, 5 min, 4° C) in Fe-free Neisseria Defined Medium (NDM,

Archibald and DeVoe, 1978) containing 0.1% BSA and then were resuspended to the desired concentration in this medium.

3.10.3 Binding assays

Binding assays were performed in microtiter plates as for tumor cell studies. Four mg unlabelled diferric Tf was added to well one and serially diluted two-fold in NDM with BSA to well 12; 0.5 ug of ¹²⁵I-labelled diferric Tf was added to each well and the well contents were mixed. Bacteria were added to each well at 4° C at a concentration of 5 X 10^9 cells per well. After 30 min incubation, cells were transferred to microcentrifuge tubes containing 600 ul of media. Wells were rinsed with 200 ul of media and this was also added to the corresponding microcentrifuge tubes. Cells were centrifuged (1 min, 15,000 X g, 4° C) and washed twice by resuspension in 1 ml NDM with BSA. Supernatants, washes and pellets were counted.

To examine Tf binding to Fe-deprived cells, MHB was prepared containing 18 ug ml⁻¹ ethylene-diamine-di-ortho-hydroxyphenyl acetic acid (EDDA) (MHB-EDDA) A 50-ml culture was grown for 16 h in MHB; 10-ml volumes of culture were then transferred to each of two centrifuge tubes. Cells were centrifuged, washed once with either MHB or MHB-EDDA and inoculated into MHB or MHB-EDDA, incubated for 4 h and harvested.

Time course binding studies were performed using Neisseria meningitidis SD1C in wells containing 70 ug Tf (69.5 ug unlabelled diferric Tf and 0.5 ug 125 I-labelled Tf) and 5 X 10⁹ cells. Cells were harvested after 2, 5, 10, 30 and 60 min

Competition studies were performed on Fe-sufficient and Fe-deprived cells. Control wells contained 0.5 ug labelled and 69.5 ug unlabelled Tf. Competitors included the following unlabelled proteins: human Tf, human Lf and conalbumin. Competitors were added at an equivalent concentration (70 ug) or at a ten-fold concentration (700 ug). For time course and competition studies, non-specific binding was assessed by including wells which contained 0.5 ug labelled Tf and 3500 ug unlabelled Tf.

72

No.

3.10.4 Plate Assays

5

The Fe concentration of MHB and Difco agar were measured by atomic absorption spectrophotometry. MHB was found to contain 0.96 ug Fe ml⁻¹ and the agar was found to contain 0.015 ug Fe mg⁻¹. Fe-limited MHA plates were prepared to contain 2.0, 2.5 and 3.0 umol EDDA umol⁻¹ Fe. Neisseria meningitidis and Neisseria subflava 10555 were plated using the spread plate method. After plates were dry, wells were punched in the agar. The desired amounts of the Tf proteins under study were added to the wells. Plates were incubated at 37° C with 5% CO₂. Zones of growth exhibition (SD1C) or inhibition (Neisseria subflava) were measured and plates were photographed.

. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

4.1 In Vivo Experiments

4.1.1. Measuring the hypoferremic response

Initially, experiments were conducted to observe the growth pattern of EL4 cells in vivo and to determine whether the proliferation of these cells elicited a hypoferremic response in C57 mice. Fig. 2A, a photograph of 'tumor cells removed from the peritoneal cavity, demonstrates the morphology of in vivo grown cells. It can be seen that cells are fairly round and uniform in size and shape compared to in vitro grown cells which are pleomorphic (Fig. 2C). The two cells photographed in Fig. 2C are representative of the morphology of in vitro grown cells. The presence of Tf on the surface of these cells was revealed by fluorescent antibody studies (Fig. 2B).

The tumor cells grew exponentially until day 10 (Fig 3) when the growth rate became slower. Although this change in growth rate did occur during the hypoferremic response (Fig. 4), many factors other than Fe limitation could have been involved including: crowding of the cells in the peritoneal cavity resulting in a limiting nutrient other than Fe, production of one or more toxic metabolites, activation of the host inflammatory response or other facets of the immune system.

Ruddon (1981) pointed out that the growth kinetics of some tumor cells in experimental animals resemble the growth kinetics of cells in culture

Fig.2

Photomicrographs of murine lymphoma cells EL4 cells were harvested from the peritoneal cavity of tumor-bearing mice 18 days post inoculation. Cells were incubated with rabbit antimouse Tf for 30 min at 4°C then washed and incubated with fluorescein-labelled goat anti-rabbit globulin for 30 min at 4° C in the dark. This temperature was used and 0 02% NaN₃ was added to the medium in order to see surface-bound not internal-After a final washing, cells were observed and ized Tf. photographed under (A) bright field and (B) UV (fluorescence) illumination. The final magnification is 576X. (C) EL4 cells were cultured in vitro for 48 % in RPMI 1640 containing 10% F.B.S., washed once and photographed under bright field microscopy; the final magnification is 822.4X.



Fig. 3

Growth of EL4 cells in C57 mice. Each mouse was injected i.p. with 10⁴ EL4 cells. At the times indicated, mice were sacrificed and tumor cells were removed by peritoneal lavage and counted in a hemacytometer with trypan blue exclusion. Points represent the average number of tumor cells from 4 experiments; 4 mice were sacrificed per time point per experiment.

0.



Changes in Fe metabolism during EL4 ascites tumor growth in mice. C57 mice were injected with 10^4 EL4 cells and at the times indicated, groups of mice were tail bled for hematocrit determinations () and then sacrificed by cardiac puncture to obtain blood for determination of serum total Fe-binding capacity (TIBC) (•), unsaturated Fe-binding capacity (UIBC), (\Box), and Tf-Fe (O').

Fig. 4



with an initial lag phase of slow growth, an exponential phase of rapid growth and then another phase of slow growth reaching a steady state of cell growth and cell loss. In many types of human cancers, however, this type of growth pattern does not occur as there may be significant cell loss or death due to exfoliation from the tumor and nutrient limitation in the central less well vascularized areas of solid tumors. Also there is wide variation in the doubling times of different types of both solid tumors and leukemias and lymphomas (Ruddon, 1981). Growth of EL4 cells *in vivo* did not demonstrate a lag phase (Fig. 3), but grew exponentially from day 0 to day 11 and subsequently the growth rate slowed down

Shortly after inoculation, the mice had serum Fe levels (Fig. 4) of 1.13 ug ml^{-1.} (20.17 uM) representing 44% Fe saturation of the serum Tf. By day 14 post injection, these levels had fatilen to 0 22 ug ml⁻¹ (3 93 iM) corresponding to 8.1% Fe saturation of Tf, revealing a marked hypoferremic The serun. Fe levels for normal control mice which remained relaresponse tively constant over an equivalent time period are found in Table 1 The drop in serum Fe in the tumor-bearing mice was more pronounced than that found in one study of human disease (Beamish et al , 1972) in which controls had a serum Fe level of 22 7 uM (35% Fe saturation). Patients with stage 4 Hodekin's disease had serum Fe levels of 6.97 uM (16% saturation) and patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma were observed to have serum Fe levels of 10.7 uM (17% saturation)

The fall in hematocrit of the C57 mice from an initial value of 49 6 (+/- 0.76) % to 40.6 (+/- 0 87) % on day 16 (Fig. 4) reveals the development of an anemia following the onset of the hypoferremic response Anemia might be expected to follow a prolonged hypoferremic response as the Tf Fe

TABLE 1.

Serum Fe levels in normal control mice.

Time (Days TIBC² UIBC³ Tf-bound Fe; & Saturation Hematocrit post (ug ml⁻¹) (ug ml⁻¹) (ug ml⁻¹) fnoculation)

		•				8
Ó	3.04	(0.05) ⁴ 1.65	(0.03) 1.39	(0.08) 45.6	(1.7) 46.7	(1.0)
• 4	3.41	(0.05) 1.85	(0.14), 1.56	(0.10) 45.8	(3.6) 45.7	(1.0) •
8	3.22	(0.02°) 1.52	(0.11) 1.71	(0.12) 52.9	(3.5) 47.9	(1.2)
- 12	3.22	(0.03) · 1.90	(0.10) 1.31	(0.11) 40.8	(3.3), 49.1	(0.8)
16	3.35	(0.03) 1.84	(0.05) 1.52	(0.06) `45.3	(1.6) 47.8	(1.1)
20	3.29	(0.08) 2.03	(0.06) 1.26	(0.08) 38.2	(2.0% 52.0	(0.8)
~	• •				v	

¹Mice were injected i.p. with 0.5 ml saline and at the indicated times were tail bled for hematocrit determination and bled by cardiac puncture for determination of serum ²TIBC (total iron-binding capacity), ³UIBC, (unsaturated iron-binding capacity) and serum Fe. These latter determinations were performed using a Becton Dickinson radioassay kit. Nine mice were sacrificed per point; the sera from 3 mice were pooled giving 3 values per point which were then averaged.

⁴Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.

supplied to the developing erythroid cells in the bone marrow would be decreased. As discussed in section 2.6 however; the anemia which occurs during neoplasia may be more complex as a decreased red cell survival time and an impaired marrow response to erythropoietin may also be involved (Lee, 1983; Zucker, 1985). The occurrence of hypoferremia and the fall in hematocrit during neoplasia have been shown in other experimental systems Chandler and Fletcher (1973) found that chickens injected with a lymphoid tumor had serum Fe levels of 0.8 ug ml⁻¹ while controls had serum Fe levels of 1.5 ug ml⁻¹. The hematocrit values were approximately 13% lower in 'tumor bearing birds by day 12 post inoculation. Schade (1976) injected mice with 2 X 10^5 plasmacytoma cells and recorded that control mice had serum Fe levels of 2.87 ug ml⁻¹ while mice bearing plasmacytomas had 1.16 ug ml⁻¹ serum Fe three weeks after inoculation. Hematocrit values were 47.4% in normal mice and 30% in tumor bearing mice.

The reduction in serum Fe levels in the mice in the present studies began relatively late in the course of the disease, at approximately day 8. By this time the peritoneal tumor burden was quite high (an average of 2 3 X 10^7 cells per mouse) with death of the mice occurring 16-20 days after inoculation. This is in sharp contrast to the time course of hypoferremia during bacterial infection. In one study, (Holbein, 1980) when C57 black mice were injected with 10^4 Neisseria meningitidis, serum Fe levels decreased immediately and continuously until no Tf Fe could be detected at 18-24 h post infection. Infection peaked at 6 h and then disappeared rapidly after 9 h in concert with the hypoferremic response. It is not known why the onset of hypoferremia occurred late in the course of tumor growth. Hypoferremia is just one component of the inflammatory response

which includes fever, synthesis of acute phase proteins and activation of the host immune system. It would seem that the host anti-tumor defense is only stimulated when the EL4 tumor burden has reached a very high level

In this study the EL4 cells were growing intraperitoneally and would thus obtain Tf Fe from the ascites fluid which is part of the extravascular Tf pool. The Tf Fe saturation of the ascites fluid was not measured in these studies as it would have been difficult to obtain sufficient ascites fluid from the mice. However, the extravascular Tf pool is in equilibrium with the serum Tf pool and a reduction in the Tf Fe saturation in the serum -Tf pool would be reflected in the Tf Fe saturation of the ascites fluid

It has been shown in the case of murine infection with *Neisseria* meningitidis (Letendre and Holbein, 1984) that hypoferremia occurs because Fe from senescent red blood cells is not returned to the Tf pool but is stored in the RE system as ferritin. It is believed that this same mechanism operates during malignancy (Weinberg, 1984) and there may also be a reduction in intestinal Fe absorption (Lee, 1983).

The weights of the mice and of the liver, spleen and thymus were recorded and compared to that of normal controls (Tables 2 and 3). The liver and spleen were of interest as they are organs involved in Tf and Fe metabolism. The thymus was of interest as the tumor cell line used was originally a thymoma. Over a period of 20 days, the tumor-bearing mice gained an average of 8.3 ($\pm/-$ 1.0) g while control mice gained 1.3 ($\pm/-$ 0.8) g. A substantial portion of the weight gain in the tumor-bearing mice can therefore be attributed to the tumor burden and to the ascites fluid. Organ weights remained relatively constant in the control group. In the tumor group, the liver weight increased with body weight until day 11.

TABLE 2.

A comparison of whole body and liver weights of normal control and tumorbearing mice over a 20-day experimental period.¹

	· ()	• Wh	ole	Mouse	Mouse •			Liver		
Time (Day	e Tumo vs) _s	r-bearin	g.	Co	ntrol`	Tumor-1	bearing	Cont	rol '	
 0	20.8	(1.0) ²	g	25.1	(0.4) g	1.14	(0.08) g	1,41	- (0.02) g	
2	21.9	(0.4)			-	1.30-	(0.03) .	-		
4	21.7	(0.8)	Ģ	25.6	(0.6).	1.23	(0.04)	1.41	(0.05)-	
6	21.9	(1.0)				1.25	(0.04)			
8	21.8	(0.6)		24.3	(0.5)	1.26	(0.06)	1.39	(0.05)	
11	24.5	(1.3)				1.39	(0 07)	,		
12	6	-		26.5	(0.5)			1.43	(0.04) -	
14	25.0	(1_2)	ر	4		1.28	(0.05) -	5		
16	27.2	(1.4)	•	26.9	(0.6)	1 23	(0.06)	1.48	(0.03)	
18	28.1	(1.8)			-	1.17	(0.05)			
20	29.1	(1.7)		26.4	(0.8)	1.00	(0.12)	1.40	(0.05)	

¹Mice were inoculated (day 0) with 10^4 EL4 cells or 0.5 ml saline At the indicated times, the whole body, liver, spleen and thymus were weighed. Values represent the mean of 4^{4} experiments (4 mice per point per experiment) for tumor-bearing mice and the mean of 9 mice for the control group. ²Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.

				, no	rmal cont	trol mice. ¹		·	• ,
		د ۱	Sp1	een	-		Thymu	.s	
Time	Tumo	r-bearin	g, .	Con	trol	Tumor-be	aring	Control	×
(Day	s)								
					. 			· · ·	•
0	0.08	(0.02) ²	g	0.08	(0.003)	g 0.05	(0.01) g	, 0.05	(0.002
2	0.09	(0.007)			0	0.06	(0.006)	٠	7
4	0.08	(0.002)	-	0.10	(0.006)	0.05		0.05	(0.003
6	0.08	(0 008)	~	• /		. 0.06	(0.008)		
8	0+ 08	(0.004)		、0.09	(0.004)	0.05	(0.009) -	0.05	(0.005
11	0.1	(0.008)	٢		,	0.05	(0.005)	Ð	
12				0.10	(0.004)			01 05	(0.005
14	0.09	(0.01)		ť	•	0.05 9	(0.007)		
16	0.09	(0.008)		0.08	(0.003)	0.03ª ((0.006)	0.044	(0.003
18	0.08	(0.012)				0.03 ((0.005)		1
20	0.07	(0.017)		0.09	(0,004)	0.03 ((0.003)	0.05	(0.003

¹The experimental details were as described in Table 2. ²Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.

6,

Ņ

Subsequently, the liver weights decreased in the terminal stages of dis-In Schade's study (1976), at three weeks post tumor cell inoculaease tion, normal mice weighing an average of 18.9 g had an average liver weight of 0.80 g and tumor-bearing mice with an average weight of 22.0 g had an average liver weight of 1.1 g. During the acute phase response, there are many structural and biosynthetic changes which occur in the liver. The overall weight of the liver increases, the ribosomal RNA increases and the amount of smooth endoplasmic reticulum increases, also the membranes of the Golgi apparatus proliferate and there is an increase in microtubules (Lee, 1983). This might account for some of the increase in liver weight during the middle phase of the experiment Spleen and thymus decrease at the end of the experimental period weights also showed a Weight reduction may be a reflection of tissue destruction which accompanies tumor growth and tissue invasion. It is not known how this would affect organ function or synthesis of proteins by the liver

84

The serum ceruloplasmin (Cp) response was also followed in tumorbearing and normal mice (Fig. 5). Serum Cp activity of tumor-bearing mice is expressed as a percentage of control values Cp is of interest for two reasons: it is involved in Pe metabolism by virtue of its ferroxidase activity and serum levels have been found to increase in patients with lymphomas and other neoplastic diseases (Shah *et al.*, 1984; Margerison and Mann, 1985; Linder *et al.*, 1981). Work has been done to evaluate the use of Cp as a marker to monitor the course of malignant disease (Linder *et al.*, 1981; Shah *et al.*, 1984; Margerison and Mann, 1985).

In the present study, there was a slight rise in Cp levels on days 4

Ø

Fig 5 Serum Cp activity in tumor-bearing mice. C57 mice weré injected with 10⁴ EL4 cells or saline and were sacrificed by cardiac puncture at designated times and Cp oxidase levels were determined on the sera by the method of Ravin (1961). The Cp values, averaged from 3 experiments, are calculated as percentage of control values (+ the standard error or the mean).

Π.


١

b

a'

~

ŝ

and 8, however, this was not found to be statistically significant (P <0.05, Student's t-test). In another study, (Linder et al., 1979) in rats with transplantable mammary or hepatic tumors, Cp oxidase activity increased 50-200% during neoplastic growth. This was found to be due to both increased synthesis of Cp and increased oxidase activity Capel and Thornley (1982) found that the plasma Cp oxidase levels were not significantly increased in C57 black mice injected with Lewis lung carcinoma. It is therefore likely that Cp response to tumor growth varies with the species of animal and the type of neoplasm studied. As discussed in section 2.5 it was found that when C57 mice were injected with N. meningitidis serum Cp levels rose to greater than 200% of control values at 24 h post infection (Letendre and Holbein, 1984a). These authors postulated that the rise in serum Cp levels which occurs during the convalescent phase of infection may be a response which follows hypoferremia to re-establish normal serum Fe levels. In this tumor model, in contrast to the murine meningococcal infection model, the disease state worsens, the serum Fe levels become lower and the animals subsequently die. As there is no recovery phase to either the disease process or the hypoferremic response. there may be no response on the part of the host to re-establish normal serum Fe levels. This may provide at least a partial explanation for the limited rise in Cp. activity. --

4.1.2 The effect of transferrin Fe administration on tumor cell growth

In the next phase of the study, an attempt was made to manipulate tumor cell growth in vivo by either supplying more Fe to the tumor cells or

6

depriving the cells of Fe. In an initial study (Fig. 6), mice were injected with 2 mg 100% saturated human Tf containing 2.8 Wig Fe on several days during the logarithmic phase of EL4 cell growth. This extra fe did not enhance growth compared to growth in control mice treated with saline It could be argued that the murine tumor cells would be unable to utilize human Tf. By this point in the work, however, the EL4-1 subline had been established in vitro and was growing well with human Tf as the Fe source, demonstrating that murine cells can efficiently utilize human Tf Fe Furthermore, in vitro studies demonstrated that 1 X 10^5 EL4-1 cells could proliferate when provided with 6 ug ml⁻¹ 10% Fe-saturated human Tf providing 0.00084 ug ml⁻¹ Fe (Fig. 13). Therefore 2 mg 100% Fe-saturated Tf carrying 2.8 ug Fe should be adequate to provide additional Fe for the larger Holbein (1981) found that human Tf number of cells growing in vivo stimulated Neisseria meningitidis infection in mice. Injection of 17 5 mg of Tf containing 22.7 ug Fe (93% saturated) caused 100% mortality compared to no deaths among the control infected mice. A lower dose, 5 mg Tf bearing 6.5 ug Fe (93% saturated), stimulated and prolonged infection In the case of Neisseria infection, the hypoferremic response has been shown to be inhibitory (Holbein, 1980) 'to N. meningitidis growth, injections of Tf-Fe therefore made Fe available and enhanced growth.

In the Neisseria meningitidis system, Fe-dextran was also found to enhance infection (Holbein *et al.*, 1979; Holbein, 1980). Dosages higher than 15 mg kg⁻¹ prolonged and exacerbated infection, while dosages above 125 mg kg⁻¹ produced fatal infections (Holbein, 1980).

The effect of added exogenous transferrin Fe on EL4 tumor cell growth in mice. Mice were inoculated with 10^4 tumor cells. Mice treated with Tf (\blacktriangle) were given 2 mg of 100% saturated Fe-Tf (2.8 ug of Fe) in 0.4 ml saline i.p. on days 9, 11, 13, 15 and 17 post tumor cell inoculation. Control mice were treated with an equivalent volume of saline (\bullet). Points represent the average number of tumor cells from 2 mice in one experiment.

Fig. 6



-

۰ , ۱ 4.1.3 The effect of desferrioxamine on tumor cell growth

An attempt was made to deprive tumor cells growing in vivo of Fe by injecting mice i.p with the Fe-chelating drug desferrioxamine. Desferrioxamine is a hydroxamic acid type of microbial siderophore which binds Fe with high affinity in a 1:1 ratio Its methane sulfonate derivative is more water-soluble and is used clinically (under the Ciba-Geigy trade name Desferal) to treat patients for Fe-overload by the intramuscular, intravenous, or subcutaneous routes (Hoffbrand, 1980). Desferal was used in this study. Desferrioxamine is believed to remove Fe from the RE system and from hepatocytes by chelating Fe from the low molecular weight labile (Fe^{+3}) is then excreted in the urine and bile Fe pool. Ferrioxamine (Hoffbrand, 1980). During hypoferremia, Fe from senescent red blood cells is stored in the RE system and this recently acquired Fe appears to be more easily chelated than the remainder of the RE Fe (Hershko and Rachmilewitz. 1978). It was thought that desferrioxamine injections might reinforce the hypoferremic response by removing Fe from the RE system allowing for more Fe storage and a greater hypoferremic response. It is not known how much Fe could be removed from the mice using this protocol as this compound has a very short half-life in vivo (5-10 minutes for an intravenous injection. Summers, et al., 1979).

Initially, (days 5-11, Fig. 7) the growth rate of tumor cells appeared to be slower in desferrioxamine-treated mice. Tumor cell numbers reached the same level in the later stages of the disease, however, and the treatment did not increase the survival time of the mice. Serum Fe levels were measured in the two groups of mice in one of the two studies (Table 4)

Fig. 7 The effect of desferrioxamine injections on the in vivo growth of EL4 cells. Mice were inoculated with 10⁴ cells. Desferrioxamine-treated mice (■) were injected i.p with 5 mg of desferrioxamine on days 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, and 18 or were given no further desferrioxamine treatment after day 12 (▲). Control mice (●) were injected with PBS. The points represent the average cell numbers harvested from 3 mice in each of 2 separate experiments (+/- the standard error of the mean).



قى .

Q

TABLE 4.

Serum Fe response in control and desferrioxamine-treated mice.

	Control		Desferrioxamine-Treated	
Time	Serum Fe (ug ml ⁻¹)	<pre>% Saturation</pre>	Serum Fe & saturation	
(Days)		of Tf	(ug ml ⁻¹)	of Tf
، بر		. .		·····
0	1.13	44.2		•
,3	1.86	55.6	2.30	64.1
5	1.72	54.1	2.03	64.1
, 7	1.40	45.5	1.85	` 56.6
9	1.40	46.2 [°] .°	1.87	60.4
11	0.95	29.1	1.43	42.4
13	0.54	15.7	0.42	11.3 ·
15	0.41	12.3	0.31	9.3
17	0.34	10.3	0.17	5.5

¹Mice were inoculated with 10^4 EL4 cells. Desferrioxamine-treated mice were injected i.p. with 5 mg of desferrioxamine on days 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, and 18. Control mice were injected i p. with 0 5 ml phosphate-buffered saline. Four mice were bled by cardiac puncture for serum Fe determination at each of the times indicated. The serum samples from the four mice were pooled and serum iron was determined using a Becton Dickinson radioassay kit.

There was no augmentation of hypoferremia due to desferrioxamine treatment in the early stages of the experiment, in fact serum Fe levels were higher in the desferrioxamine group. On days 13, 15 and 17 serum Fe and Tf saturation levels were lower in the desferrioxamine-treated group. On the basis of the serum Fe levels, the slower tumor cell growth rate cannot be attributed to an initial enhanced hypoferremic response. Perhaps desferrioxamine itself injected into the peritoneal cavity had an antiproliferative effect on the EL4 cells. This might be due to desferri-.oxamine entering the tumor cells and chelating Fe required as an enzyme co-factor for ribonucleotide reductase or any of the numerous other Ferequiring enzymes. Lederman et al. (1984) studied the effect of desferrioxamine in lymphocytes in vitro and found it inhibited DNA synthesis; this drug decreased intracellular levels of deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates and blocked cells in the S phase of the cell cycle The short halflife of the drug in vivo due to urinary excretion might, however, argue against this idea.

In certain other disease states desferrioxamine treatment has been found to be beneficial. Holbein *et al.* (1979) found that fatal Fe-dextran enhanced infections could be reversed if mice were injected with 1,250 mg kg⁻¹ desferrioxamine up to 3 h after infection with 10^3 or fewer *Neisseria meningitidis* cells. Lalonde and Holbein (1984), studying the role of Fe in *Trypanosoma cruzi* infection in mice, found that a combination of desferrioxamine treatment and an Fe-deficient diet reduced the pathogenicity of this intracellular pathogen of the RE system in both susceptible $C_3^{2}H$ mice and moderately resistant B_6 mice.

4.1.4 The effect of inflammation-induced hypoferremia on tumor cell growth

Another attempt was made to decrease in vivo growth of EL4 cells by Fe deprivation. In the initial in vivo studies (Fig. 3 and Fig. 4), it was noted that the onset of the hypoferremic response occurred late in the disease when the tumor burden was high. It appeared that the response occurred too late to be of benefit to the host. The question then arose. would an early hypoferremic response lower serum Fe levels sufficiently to inhibit tumor growth? This could be answered using turpentine to create a model of hypoferremia. Mice were injected subcutaneously in the back with • turpentine and this induced a marked hypoferremic response (Fig 8). Serum Fe levels had fallen by 12 h and reached their lowest level (0.65 ug ml⁻¹ 19.6% Fe saturation of Tf) by 24 h. The reduction in serum Fe levels between 12 and 36 h was found to be highly significant (P < 0.001, Student's t-test). Between 48 and 60 h levels of serum Fe had returned to normal Twenty-four h after turpentine injection serum TIBC had risen dramatically

If at 48-60 h post inoculation serum Fe levels had returned to normal but the amount of Tf in the pool was increasing (shown by increase in the TIBC values) this would in effect result in a prolonged reduction in Tf Fe saturation. Therefore in the next study, mice were injected subcutaneously with either turpentine or saline and injected one h later with tumor cells. In the early hypoferremic response (Fig. 9), serum Fe levels dropped to 0.62 ug ml⁻¹ (16.9% saturation) at 24 h post injection, the Fe kinetics being somewhat different than in the initial turpentine studies (Fig. 8). Serum Fe had increased by day 6 and there was then a second

Fig. 8

The hypoferremic response during turpentine-induced inflammation in mice. Mice werd lightly anaesthetized with ether and injected subcutaneously in the back in two separate sites with 0.05 ml turpentine. At the indicated time points, 6 mice were bled by cardiac puncture for determination of TIBC (**▲**), UIBC (**●**), Tf-Fe (**■**), and Cp oxidase activity (**O**). Values shown represent the average data from two experiments.



9. 5

l

1

Changes in Fe metabolism due to turpentine-induced inflammation and EL4 tumor cell growth in mice. Mice were injected subcutaneously in the back with 0.05 ml turpentine in two separate sites One h later, mice were injected with 10^4 tumor cells. At the indicated times, 4 mice were bled by cardiac puncture to determine TIBC (•), UIBC (□), and Tf-Fe (O).

0 "

Fig. 9



Fig. 10 The influence of turpentine inflammation-induced hypoferremia on the growth of EL4 tumor cells in mice. Mice were injected subcutaneously in the back in two sites with 0.05.ml of either saline (●) or turpentine (▲). One h later they were injected with 10⁴ tumor cells. Cells counts were performed at the appropriate times. The indicated values represent average tumor cell numbers recovered from 6 mice in two experiments.



hypoferremia due to the proliferation of tumor cells. After turpentine administration, the TIBC rose and remained high throughout the experiment. Although Tf Fe saturation levels remained low throughout most of the experiment, no inhibition of tumor cell growth was observed (Fig. 10).

In contrast to this, a similar study was carried out with Neisseria meningitidis infection in C57 mice (Beaumier et al., 1984). Twelve h after mice were induced to become hypoferremic with turpentine injections, they were inoculated with Neisseria meningitidis. In the hypoferremic group, the peak of infection was significantly lower. Also, the infection was cleared in 5⁶2 h in turpentine-treated mice as opposed to 10.4 h in saline control mice

When turpentine is injected hypoferremia is induced and the whole inflammatory process is stimulated, resulting in increased synthesis of acute phase proteins. This is demonstrated in the turpentine studies by enhancement of Cp activity (Fig. 8). Cp activity had increased by 12 h post turpentine inoculation and reached 235% of control levels at 60 h, a much greater stimulation of Cp activity than that observed due to tumor cell growth (Fig. 5). It is interesting to note that lowering of serum Fe in combination with other facets of the inflammatory response induced by turpentine injections had no inhibitory effect on *in vivo* EL4 tumor cell growth.

Both Neisseria meningitidis and EL4 cells must acquire Tf Fe from the host in order to proliferate. However, the hypoferremic response has a much different effect in the two systems. In the case of murine infection with the meningococcus, infection can be Fe enhanced with Fe-dextran or Fe-Tf or can be Fe-controlled e.g. by subcutaneous turpentine injection or merely by

the naturally-occurring hypoferremic response. The onset of the hypoferremic response is immediate and beneficial to the host. In the case of EL4 cells the hypoferremic response occurs late in the disease and is of no real benefit to the host. With the protocols used in these studids the in vivo growth of tumor cells could not be influenced by Fe addition or deprivation. It would seem that EL4 cells have very low Fe requirements perhaps due to a primarily glycolytic metabolism and/or are equipped to obtain sufficient Fe for all their needs under the adverse conditions of low Tf Fe saturation.

'In order to define the Fe requirements of these tumor cells for growth and to assess the effect of a reduction in Tf Fe saturation on Feacquisition and growth, we turned to an *in vitro* system using the EL4-1 cells.

4.2 In Vitro Growth Experiments

4.2.1 The effect of transferrin Fe saturation on in vitro growth of EL4-1 cells

The first in vitro experiment was designed to demonstrate that EL4 cells do require Fe for growth. When EL4 cells were grown in RPMI 1640 with 10% fetal bovine serum (Fig. 11) cells grew rapidly reaching their maximal number by day 3 (1.7×10^6 cells ml⁻¹). With the addition of 50 ug ml⁻¹ desferrioxamine growth was significantly inhibited. When the desferrioxamine was saturated with Fe, growth was identical to that of the control indicating that the growth inhibition was directly due to Fe deprivation.

^{*}All further in vitro work was carried out using the EL4-1 subline; these cells were adapted to growth in RPMI 1640 synthetic medium and human Tf. The subline was developed by culturing the original EL4 cells in RPMI containing human Tf only and repeatedly passaging the cells in this medium. The growth of the cells in the absence of serum was initially poor with a cell doubling time of 72 h but repeated subculture in this medium yielded the EL4-1 subline with an average doubling time of 24 h. The original EL4 cells growing in serum containing medium demonstrated an average doubling time of 12 h. The two cell lines showed an identical time course of tumorigenesis in mice. Even after passage through a mouse, the EL4-1 cells retained their ability to grow in the absence of serum. These cells grew well (Fig. 12) on 100% saturated human Tf (50 ug ml⁻¹) It was found that the addition of 50 ug ml⁻¹ apo-Tf enhanced growth by binding medium Fe

Fig. 11 The effect of désferrioxamine on the in vitro growth of EL4 cells. EL4 cells were inoculated into RPMI 1640 containing 10% F.B.S. at an initial level of 1 X 10⁵ cells ml⁻¹ with no further additions (▲) or with the addition of 50 ug ml⁻¹ desferrioxamine (●) or with 50 ug ml⁻¹ Fe-saturated desferrioxamine (●). Cell counts were performed at the times indicated in a hemacytometer using trypan blue exclusion.



Ľ

Fig. 12 Growth of EL4-1 cells in vitro on human transferrin. EL4-1 cells were inoculated into RPMI containing 50 ug ml⁻¹ 100% saturated human Tf (■), 50 ug ml⁻¹ apo-Tf (△), 50 ug ml⁻¹ boiled apo-Tf (□), 50 ug ml⁻¹ human serum albumin (O) or into RPMI containing no additions (●). Cells were enumerated at the appropriate times as described in Fig. 11.



while boiled apo-Tf or human serum albumin had no growth-enhancing effects. It was found using atomic absorption spectrophotometry, that RPMI 1640 contained 0.019 +/- 0.009 ug ml⁻¹ (0 33 +/- 0 16 uM) total Fe Theoreti- cally, this is enough Fe to 27% Fe saturate 50 ug ml⁻¹ apo-Tf. Therefore for all subsequent in vitro studies RPMI was fe extracted by incubating it in the presence of a two-fold molar excess of apo-Tf for 20 h at 37°, 5% CO₂. Ferrated Tf was then removed by Amicon ultra-filtration as discussed in section 3.4.1.

The question of the effect of a decrease in Tf Fe saturation on EL4-1 cell growth was then directly addressed. Cells were grown in RPMI containing 6 ug ml⁻¹ (75 nM) human Tf at 100%, 50% and 10% saturation and with no Tf (Fig. 13). The media thus contained 0.0084 (0 15 uM), 0 0042 (0 075 uM), 0.00084 (0.015 uM) and 0 ug ml⁻¹ Fe respectively Fig. 13 demonstrates that the cells do not proliferate in the absence of Tf-Fe and that cells can grow with very little Tf-borne Fe present. In this experiment, the cells did grow better on 100% and 50% saturated Tf than on 10% saturated Tf. However, this may have been a function of the low concentration of Fe available at the 10% saturation level rather than a function of Fe availability due to low percent saturation. In fact in this experiment, at the low level of Tf Fe provided, 'at each saturation level peak growth of the cells was directly proportional to the amount of Tf Fe available. In the next experiment, the Tf concentrations were raised to 50 ug ml⁻¹ (Fig. 14). Growth was good in all cases with virtually no difference between 100% and `50% Fe saturation (1.25 and 0.625 uM Fe . respectively). By day 4 when peak growth was reached at both these saturation levels cell density was 1×10^6 cells ml⁻¹ representing the maximal

Fig. 13

Growth of EL4-1 lymphoma cells on serum-free RPMI 1640 with 75 nM human transferrin at 100%, 50% and 10% saturation. EL4-1 cells were removed from the peritoneal cavity of a mouse and grown for 48 h in Fe-extracted RPMI containing 0.3 hum 50% Fesaturated human Tf. Cells were washed and incubated for 24 h $(37^{\circ} \text{ C}, 5\% \text{ CO}_2)$ in RPMI containing no Fe or Tf. Cells were then washed and inoculated at an initial level of 1 X 10⁵ cells ml⁻¹ into Fe-extracted RPMI containing 75 nM (6 ug ml⁻¹) human Tf of 100% (•), 50% (•) and 10% saturation (•) or into media' containing no Tf (\Box). These conditions represent 0.15, 0.075, 0.015 and 0.0 uM total Tf Fe respectively. Growth was assessed as in Fig. 11.



Growth of EL4-1 lymphoma cells on serum-free RPMI with 0 625 uM or 37.5 uM human transferrin at various saturation levels. The experiments were performed as described in Fig. 13 but media contained 0.625 uM (50 ug ml⁻¹) Tf at 100% (\blacksquare), 50% (\blacksquare) and 10% (\blacktriangle) saturation or 37 5 uM (3.0 mg ml⁻¹) Tf at 50% (\bigcirc) and 10% (\bigstar) saturation. These trials contained 1.25, 0.625, 0 125, 37 5 and 7.5 uM Fe respectively.

Fig 14



saturation density for these cells. Thus growth was not Fe limited. Growth at 10% saturation (0.125 uM Fe) was good but slightly lower. If available Tf concentrations were raised to the physiological level of 3 mg ml⁻¹ (37.5 uM Tf) there was no difference in growth between cells grown with 50% saturated Tf 2 1 ug ml⁻¹ or 37.5 uM Fe) and cells grown with 10% Fe saturated Tf (0.42 ug ml⁻¹ or 7.5 uM Fe). This decrease in Fe saturation from 50% to 10% mimics the decrease in Tf Fe saturation which would occur during the hypoferremic response *in vivo*. At 10% saturation and physiological Tf levels cells demonstrated excellent growth, at 10% saturation and Tf concentrations 1/60 of physiological levels, cells demonstrated good growth indicating that even at very low saturation levels Tf Fe is readily available for tumor cell proliferation.

When cells were inoculated at a lower initial level of 1 X 10^4 cells ml⁻¹ cells grew only slightly more slowly on 10% saturated Tf than 50% saturated Tf at physiological Tf levels and cells reached the same final saturation density (Fig. 15). This figure also demonstrates that these cells can grow on bovine hemoglobin providing 17 9 uM Fe although growth is noticeably poorer than growth on 10% saturated Tf providing 7.5 uM Fe.

4.2.2 Growth of EL4-1 cells on non-transferrin Fe sources

Figure 16 shows that EL4-1 cells can grow on bovine hemoglobin, horse • spleen ferritin and the inorganic Fe salt ferrous ammonium sulfate. The cells grew better on this latter source of Fe when 50 ug ml⁻¹ apo-Tf was added to the medium as ° apo-Tf is able to bind the Fe and render it directly available to the cells. The cells grew better on bovine

Fig. 15 Growth of EL4-1 cells on physiological transferrin levels and bovine hemoglobin. EL4-1 cells, prepared as described in Fig. 13, were inoculated at an initial level of 1 X 10⁴ cells ml⁻¹ into RPMI containing 37.5 uM (3.0 mg ml⁻¹) human Tf at 50% (▲) and 10% saturation (■) and containing no Tf (O). Cells were also inoculated into a flask containing bovine hemoglobin containing 17.9 uM Fe (●).



•

, ''**'**

Growth of EL4-1 cells on various Fe complexes. EL4-1 cells, prepared as described in Fig. 13, were inoculated at a starting level of 1 X 10⁵ cells ml⁻¹ into RPMI containing bovine hemoglobin (\bullet), horse spleen ferritin (O), ferrous ammonium sulfate (\blacktriangle) and ferrous ammonium sulfate with 50 ug ml⁻¹ human apo-Tf (\bullet): All Fe sources were added to give a final Fe concentration of 17.9 uM (1 ug ml⁻¹).

Fig. 16



Ì

hemoglobin when started at a higher initial number of 1 X 10^5 cells ml⁻¹ than when they were started at 1 X 10^4 cells ml⁻¹ (Fig. 15) It is not known whether inorganic Fe was directly available to the cells or whether it was made available by traces of Tf which could have been transferred with the cells. Attempts were made to minimize this by washing cells and incubating them in Fe and Tf-free media for 24 h then washing the cells again before using them'in an experiment.

These results are interesting for two reasons. First, the results demonstrate that EL4-1 cells can utilize Fe sources other than Tf for growth. Titeux et al. (1984) also found that Fe salts, hemin or hemoglobin could replace Tf for serum-free culture of 3 human leukemic cell lines Hemoglobin would probably not normally be available in vivo as free theme or hemoglobin From lysed erythrocytes is normally bound by hemopexin or haptoglobin and removed from the circulation. During the tissue destruction which may accompany neoplastic disease, however, hemoglobin Fe might become Secondly, these studies demonstrate that Tf available to the tumor cells is a much more efficient Fe donor to the cells than the other Fe sources studied. If Fig. 14 and Fig. 16 are compared it can be seen that the lymphoma cells grew almost as well on 50 ug ml⁻¹ 50% saturated Tf (0 035 ug ml^{-1} Fe) as on hemoglobin providing 1 ug ml⁻¹ Fe and better than on ferritin or inorganic Fe donating 1 ug ml⁻¹ Fe.

4.2.3 Determination of cellular Fe, respiration rate, cellular heme,
a lactic acid production and enzyme profiles of the lymphoma cells

The fact that the lymphoma cells could grow on such low levels of Tf-

108 /

Fe as 6 ug ml⁻¹ at 10% saturation providing 0.00084 ug ml⁻¹ Fe suggested that the cells have a primarily glycolytic metabolism as in this case little Fe would be required for the synthesis of cytochromes and the other Fe-containing compounds of the respiratory chain. In order to investigate this, various aspects of the cellular physiology of the lymphoma cells were Cellular Fe levels were measured by atomic absorption examined. spectrophotometry; the presence of cellular hemes was investigated by looking for a heme Soret peak at approximately 417 nm when scanning a homogenized cell preparation spectrophotometrically. The cellular respiration rate was also measured (Table 5). The presence of hemes was not detectable (Table 5); the cells must, however, possess low levels of hemes the cells demonstrated a low level of cyanide-sensitive respiration. as The addition of cyanide eliminated respiration completely.

The Fe content of EL4-1 cells (Table 5) can alternatively be expressed as 22 ng Fe per 10^6 cells or 39.3 nmol per 10^8 cells. Smit *et al.* (1982) measured the Fe content of several tissue culture cells and found that DON Chinese hamster fibroblasts, Chinese hamster ovary cells (CHO) and BW 1 mouse hepatoma cells contained 35.2, 42.6 and 38.6 nmol Fe per 10^8 cells, levels which are very similar to those found for EL4-1 cells. It is interesting to note that normal and malignant cultured cells such as the EL4 and mouse hepatoma cells contain relatively equivalent amounts of cellular Fe This implies that there is no enhanced storage of Fe by malignant-cells grown in vitro. A similar observation was made by Schade (1976) in in vivo studies in plasmacytoma-bearing mice.

To further examine the glycolytic capacity of EL4-1 cells, these cells were grown in RPMI with 0.3 uM 50% saturated human Tf for 72 h after which
TABLE 5.

Cellular Fe, O2 consumption and heme Fe of EL4 cells.

Cells Grown	Cellular Fe ¹ ug Fe mg ⁻¹ protein ²	O ₂ Consumption ³ nmol/min/10 ⁶ cells (+ cyanide)	Heme Fe ⁴ OD ⁴¹⁷ / 10 ⁶ cells
EL4 in vitro	0.108 (0.042) ⁵	0.62	a not
•		(cyanide sensitive)	detectable [.]
EL4 in vivo	0.075 (0.021)	0.52 (cyanide sensitive)	not detectable
EL4-1 in vitro	0.168 (0.016)	not done	not done

¹Cellular Fe was determined on homogenized cell preparations using atomic absorption spectrophotometry in the graphite furnace mode.

²Protein assays were performed according to the method of Lowry *et al.* (1951).

³Respiration studies were performed using a Clark polarographic 0_2 electrode. Determinations were done with 3 ml samples of cells (1 X 10^6 cells ml⁻¹). After initial 0_2 uptake rates were established (approximately 10 min) 10 ul of 300 mM KCN was added and uptake was followed for 20 min. ⁴To detect hemes, cell homogenates were scanned from 450-350 nm (Perkin Elmer 555 UV-Vis spectrophotometer). Horse heart cytochrome c was used as a standard. For Fe and heme analysis of *in vivo* cells, mice were bled completely from the retro-orbital sinus before the tumor cells were harvested. Any contaminating erythrocytes were lysed. The cell suspension was washed twice and resuspended in saline.

 $^{5}\mathrm{Numbers}$ in parentheses represent the standard deviation.

ti.

time both the residual glucose and the lactic acid concentration of the medium were measured. It was determined that of the original 11 1 umo/ $m1^{-1}$ glucose present, 4.45 umol of glucose was utilized. This could theoretically give rise to 8.91 umol ml⁻¹ lactic acid. The actual value of lactic acid measured was 6.63 umol ml⁻¹, 74.4% of the maximal theoretical value. Thus a substantial proportion of the glucose utilized was metabolized to lactic acid suggesting that these cells_do indeed have a highly glycolytic metabolism and this may at least in part account for the low Fe requirements for growth.

Finally, in this phase of the study, the enzyme profiles of Fedeprived and Fe-sufficient cells were compared (Table 6) The only qualitative differences in the enzyme contents of the cells were that the Fe-deprived cells demonstrated a very slight positive reaction for alphamannosidase and alpha-fucosidase. There were also several quantitative differences. Quantitation was, however, crude being by visual comparison of control and test color development. (The API ZYM system used for the enzyme analysis is fully described in appendix II.)

4.2.4 Growth of EL4-1 cells on various transferrins

The next aspect of the study involved performing growth experiments to determine whether cells could grow on other forms of Tf besides human Tf; these included murine Tf, bovine Tf, lactoferrin (Lf) and conalbumin Figure 17 demonstrates that EL4-1 cells grow equally well on 50% Fedaturated mouse or human Tf at the low levels of 3 and 6 ug ml⁻¹ (37.5 and 75 nM Tf and Fe respectively). Figure 18 reveals that the cells grew less

Enzyme profiles¹ of Fe-sufficient² and Fe deprived³ EL4-1 cells.

Number	Enzyme	Fe-sufficient	Fe-deprised
1	alkaline phosphatase	1/24	<u> </u>
2	esterase (C4)	1	2
· / \ 3	رم esterase lipase (C8)	• 2	3
4	lipase (C14)	1/2	1/2
5	0 leucine aminopeptidase	5	3
6	valine aminopeptidase	1	1
7 ,	cystine aminopeptidase	2	^{بر} 2
8	trypsin	-	-
9	chymotrypsin	-	-
10	acid phosphatase	2	4
n ·	phosphoamidase	2	2.5
12	alpha-galactosidase	•	-
13	beta-galactosidase	1	2
14	beta-glucuronidase	· 2	3
15	alpha-glucosidase	1/2	1
16	4ع beta-glucosidase	1/2	1
17	N-acętyl-beta-	•	, ,
	glucqsaminidase	1	2
L8	alpha-mannosidase	- -	1/2
19	alpha-fucosidase	-	1/4

¹The enzyme profiles were done using the API ZYM system from Analytab Products Division of Ayerst Laboratories. Cells were washed in saline and resuspended in 3 ml saline at 7.6 X 10⁶ cells ml⁻¹. The API ZYM strips were inoculated and incubated at 37[°] C for 4 h. Reagents A and B were added and the strips were read by comparing the colour reactions to those in the colour chart provided.

 2,3 EL4-1 cells were removed from a mouse and cultured in vitro with 75 nM 50% Fe-saturated human Tf. After 48 h cells were washed and split into 2 sets: one set was grown as above, the other was grown without Tf or Fe for 40 h.

⁴The colour intensity was estimated on a scale from 0-5 as determined by comparison to a colour chart provided with the API ZYM system.

¶. -

Fig. 17 A comparison of growth of EL4-1 cells for unan and murine transferrin. The lymphoma cells, prepared as in Fig. 13, were inoculated into media containing 37.6 (3 ug ml⁻¹) (•) and 75 (\odot) nM (6 ug ml⁻¹) murine Tf or 37.5 (•) and 75 (\odot) nM human Tf at 50% Fe saturation.



Fig. 18 A comparison of growth of EL4-1 cells on human and bovine transferrin. Lymphoma cells, cultured and prepared as described for Fig. 13, were inoculated into media containing 75 nM (6 ug ml⁻¹) (●) or 250 nM (20 ug ml⁻¹) (O) human Tf and 75 nM (■) or 250 nM (□) bovine Tf at 50% Fe saturation.

 $\langle n \rangle$

₽,-



well on 50% Fe-saturated bovine Tf at both 6 and 20 ug ml⁻¹ than on human Tf (this represents 75 and 250 nM Tf and Fe respectively). Figure 19 shows that these lymphoma cells could not utilize Fe from 50% Fe-saturated conal-These results are similar to the findings of others using bumin or Lf. For example, Messmer (1973) showed that Chinese different cell lines. hamster V79 cells grew well with human and rabbit Tf's but poorly with por-Furthermore, Chinese or Syrian cine and bovine Tf's and conalbumin. hamster serum and human serum were found to be better Fe sources for the cells, than were rat or mouse sera. Bartek et al. (1985) found that MOLT-3 human T-leukemic cells could grow on human, porcine or rabbit Tf at a concentration of 5 ug ml⁻¹ but could not grow on boyine Tf at this concentra-Tsavaler et al. (1986) recently found that human K562 cells grew tion. equally well on bovine or human Tf at the relatively high concentration of 300 ug ml⁻¹. Penhallow et al. (1986) found that for in vitro culture of HeLa cells a higher concentration of bovine Tf was required than of human Tf. Thus, as is particularly apparent at low Tf concentrations, cells have If species preferences for growth. EL4-1 cells grow better on human or murine Tf than on bovine Tf and cannot use Lf or conalbumin Fe. Lf. however, would not be expected to be a good Fe source as it does not release Fe at low pH as Tf does; therefore it would not relinquish Fe intracellularly within an acidic endocytic vesicle.

`117

. Fig. 19

1

Growth of EL4-1 cells on conalbumin and lactoferrin. EL4-1 cells, prepared as in Fig. 13, were inoculated into media containing 75 nM (6 ug ml⁻¹) human Tf (\bullet), 1000 nM (80 ug ml⁻¹) conalbumin (\blacksquare) and 1000 nM Lf (\blacktriangle). All proteins were prepared to 50% Fe saturation.



-

0

-

4.2.5 Uptake of ⁵⁹Fe from 50% Fe-saturated human transferrin by EL4-1 cells and the effect of the hypoferremic response

The rate of Fe acquisition by EL4-1 cells was determined by measuring uptake of ⁵⁹Fe from 50% saturated Tf at concentrations from 12.5 to 600 nM Tf and Fe. A plot of uptake velocity (Fig 20A) as a function of medium Fe concentration at a constant Tf concentration demonstrated that uptake velocity was approaching maximal at 150 nM Fe and Tf Saturation of the Fe uptake system occurred at 1/250 of the physiological Tf levels Subsequently; the effect of the hypoferremic response on Fe uptake was examined. Cells were incubated in aliquots with 75 nM 50%, saturated ⁵⁹Fe- Tf plus sufficient added apo-Tf to reduce the per cent Fe saturation from 50% to 27, 15, 8 and 4% (Fig. 20C). It is evident that, this substantial decrease in saturation does not effect a proportional decrease in Fe uptake by the cells. This same data was plotted as uptake velocity versus increase in medium UIBC (Fig. 20B). The gradual increase in UIBC from 75 to 1635 nM mimics the decrease in Tf Fe saturation and corresponding rise in UIBC which would occur in vivo during the hypoferremic response. The results demonstrate that the Fe uptake velocity is relatively insensitive to large increases in UIBC.

In a subsequent experiment, uptake of 59 Fe from Tf was measured by cells in the presence of 24 ug ml⁻¹ (300 nM) 50% Fe-saturated Tf and by cells in which this effective Tf saturation was reduced to 10% by the addition of apo-Tf (Fig. 21). With this five-fold reduction in Tf Fe saturation only a 34% decrease in Fe uptake was observed In contrast, when studies were performed in which unlabelled 50% Fe-saturated Tf was added to

Fig. 20

Evaluation of Fe uptake from transferrin under various conditions. (A) The relationship between the steady state velocity of Fe uptake by EL4-1 cells and the concentration of 50% Fesaturated Tf was determined. ⁵⁹Fe-labelled 50% saturated Tf was added to EL4-1 cells (1.5 X 10^6 ml⁻¹) at the indicated concentrations at zero time. Uptake is calculated from total -Fe taken up after one h incubation. Data are averages of 4 replicates. (B) An examination of the relationship between the steady state uptake velocity and the per cent Fe saturation of Tf at a constant Fe concentration of 75 nM. Uptake is calculated from total Fe taken up after one h incubation of EL4-1 cells (1.5 X 10^6 ml⁻¹) with ⁵⁹Fe-labelled Tf. In each case. the 75 nM Fe was added as monoferric Tf and the UIBC progressively increased by addition of apo-Tf. If Fe saturation values for UIBC levels of 75, 198, 415, 816 and 1635 nM are 50, 27, 15, 8 and 4% respectively. The results are determined from data obtained in Fig. 20(C).

Ū



ې

Į,

Fig. 20C

The effect of the addition of increasing concentrations of apo-Tf on Fe uptake was examined. Seventy five nM (6 ug ml⁻¹) 50% Fe-saturated ⁵⁹Fe-labelled Tf was added to each of 5 flasks containing 1 5 X 10⁶ cells ml⁻¹. The control flask contained no further additions (•). To the remaining flasks increasing concentrations of apo-Tf were added to give the final total Tf concentrations 136 nM (•), 240 nM (•), 445 nM (•) and 855 nM (Δ). Duplicate one-ml samples were removed at the specified times and Fe uptake was measured. Data points represent the average of 4 experiments.

,



, **.**

•

, , , Fig. 21 The effect of increasing the concentration of apotransferrin (raising the UIBC) on the Fe uptake rate by EL4-1 cells. The lymphoma cells (1.5 X 10^6 ml⁻¹) were incubated with ⁵⁹Fe-Tf at 50% saturation (300 nM Tf, 300 nM Fe) (•) and at 10% saturation (1500 nM Tf, 300 nM Fe) (•). Duplicate one-ml samples were removed at the indicated times and Fe uptake was measured. Duta points represent the average of two experiments.



assays in ratios of 1:1 and 1:3 with radiolabelled Tf, uptake f labelled Fe was reduced by 50% and 62% respectively at 1, 3 and 6 h. Fe-containing Tf has a much greater inhibitory effect on uptake than apo-Tf.

In order to explore the reason for this slight inhibition by apo-Tf on Fe uptake, control microtiter wells of EL4-1 cells were incubated with 24 ug ml⁻¹ 50% Fe-saturated ⁵⁹Fe-Tf at 4° C; test wells also contained unlabelled 50%-saturated Tf or apo-Tf at ratios of 1.1, 1.10, 1:100 and 1:1000 to radiolabelled Tf This assay was performed at 4° C in order to (examine binding of Tf to cells as opposed to uptake of Fe. . It can be seen (Fig. 22) that relative to ferrated Tf, apo-Tf offered very little compet?tion to labelled Tf for binding to the cells. As apo-Tf has very little binding affinity for the cellular Tf receptors the addition of apo-Tf to uptake assays, to mimic the hypoferremic response, caused little inhibition of Fe uptake from Tf. These results concur with those of Dautry-Varsat et al. (1983) and Klausner et al. (1983a) who found that eucaryotic Tf receptors have high affinity for ferri-If and a lower affinity for apo-If at neutral pH. At acidic pH, however, the Tf receptor has a high affinity for apo-Tf. It is this differential response of the receptor to ferri- and apo-Tf which enables the cellular Tf cycle to function.

In Fig. 21 it was demonstrated that a 1.5 dilution of 50% Fesaturated Tf with apo-Tf decreased Fe uptake by 34%. In Fig. 22 apo-Tf added at a ratio of 1:100 to radiolabelled ferri-Tf did not affect binding of ferri-Tf at 4° C. It should be pointed out, however, that in one case uptake at 37° C over a 6 h period was being measured and in the other case binding at 4° C after 60 min was being examined. Fig. 21 demonstrates that the difference in uptake at 50% and 10% saturation after 60 min was very

Fig. 22

Binding of 50% saturated ⁵⁹Fe-labelled human transferrin to EL4-1 cells in the presence of unlabelled 50%-saturated transferrin or apotransferrin. EL4-1 cells were added at a level of $3 \times 10^6 \text{ ml}^{-1}$ to 24-well microtiter plates containing 24 ug ml⁻¹ ⁵⁹Fe-labelled 50%-saturated human Tf (control wells). Test wells also contained unlabelled 50%-saturated human Tf () or apo-Tf () in ratios of 1:1, 1:10, 1:100 and 1:1000 to labelled Tf. Binding proceeded at 4° C for 60 min.



 $\widehat{}$

slight. The apparent difference between the data in Fig. 21 and Fig. 22 do not suggest that some of the 59 Fe was non-specifically bound to the Tf as the Tf was Fe loaded with ferric citrate which delivers Fe specifically to the Tf Fe binding site. Also, Tf preparations were checked for specific Fe binding by determining the absorbance ratio at 465/280 nm (section 3.5.1) which demonstrates that Fe is correctly bound to the Fe binding site of Tf.

4.3 Transferrin binding studies

4.3.1 Enumeration of surface transferrin binding sites on EL4-1 cells

The results of section 4.2.4 were interesting as they suggested that as the EL4-1 cells grew better on specific types of Tf, the cellular Tf receptor might preferentially bind certain types of Tf over others. Before examining Tf-receptor binding specificity, several other aspects of Tf binding to EL4-1 cells were examined. Initially, binding studies at 4° C were performed in which EL4-1 cells were incubated with various concentrations ' of ¹²⁵I-labelled Tf in RPMI 1640 media containing 0.1% BSA to minimize nonspecific binding. The amount of Tf bound at each concentration was measured (Fig. 23). From this data, Scatchard plots were drawn and the number of surface binding sites were determined from the abscissa intercept (Inset, Fig. 23). In these studies non-specific binding was corrected for using the method of Chamness and McGuire (1975). The cells were found to have an average of 1.1×10^5 surface binding sites per cell. The dissociation constant (K_d) , determined from the slope of this graph, was 5.9 X 10^{-9} M representing the ligand concentration at which half the receptors are occupied. This concentration is far lower than the mean physiological If concentration in the serum, 37.5 uM, indicating a very high receptorligand affinity. Many similar binding studies have been performed on human, mouse and rat cells and a few of these studies have been summarized in Table 7 for a comparison with EL4-1 cells. It can be seen that EL4-1 cells are very similar to other cultured cell lines in both the number of binding sites and the K_d . Ciechanover et al. (1983) found that HepG2 human

Fig. 23

Binding of radiolabelled diferric human transferrin to EL4-1 cells at 4° C as a function of medium transferrin concentration. EL4-1 cells were cultured *in vitro* in RPMI with 0.3 uM human diferric Tf. Cells were harvested and incubated $(37^{\circ} \text{ C}, 90 \text{ min})$ to eliminate internalized Tf. The cells were washed and 1.5 X 10⁶ cells were added to microtiter wells prepared as follows. Ten ug of ¹²⁵I-labelled Tf in RPMI with 0.1% BSA was added to well one of the microtiter plate then diluted serially two-fold to well 11. The final volume in each well was 200 ul. Binding proceeded for 90 min at 4° C. Data points represent the average of 4 experiments. Inset: A Scatchard plot of the above data.

BSA (0.1%) was added to the medium to minimize non-specific binding. For the Scatchard analysis, any non-specific binding which occurred was corrected for using the method of Chamness and McGuire (1975).

*



TRANSFERRIN AVAILABLE (103 fmol)

، .

TABLE 7.

1

A comparison of cell lines with respect to number of transferrin binding sites per cell and transferrin binding affinity.

Cell line and type (Reference)	Temp.	• Binding sit	es K _a -M ⁻¹
۰. ۴.	(°C)	per cell	K _d -M
K562-human erythroleukemia(1)	4	1.5 X 10 ⁵	κ _d -2.1 x 10 ⁻⁹
HGC-25-human pancreatic carcinoma(2)	37	0.37 x 10 ⁵	K _a -2.58 X 10
Human fibroblasts(3)	37	3.9 x 10 ⁵	к _d -5 1 X 10 ⁻⁹
/ A431-human epidermoid carcinoma(4)	5	, •1.2 x 10 ⁵	- ``
HepG2-human hepatoma(5)	4	5.1 X 10 ⁴	K _d -4.4 X 10 ⁻⁹
L1210-mouse leukemia(6)	37	6.4 X 10 ⁵	× .
Mouse teratocarcinoma(7)	4	5.7 x 10 ³	К _d -6.7 X 10 ⁻⁹
RILQ-mouse thymic lymphoma(8)	15	1.2 x 10 ⁵	К _а -5.1 X 10 ⁸
Mouse spleen(8)	15	5.5 ₃ x 10 ⁴	$K_{a} - 4.3 \times 10^{8}$
Mouse thymus(8)	15	<5.0 X 10 ³	-
Mouse reticulocytes(8)	15	6.1 x 10 ⁴	К _а -5.9 X 10 ⁸
Rat erythroblasts(9)	0	5.0 x 10 ⁵	κ _a -2.5 x 10 ⁷

- (1) Klausner et al. (1983a)
- (2) Urushizaki et al. (1984)
- (3) Ward et al: (1982)
- (4) Hopkins and Trowbridge (1983)
- (5) Ciechanover et al. (1983a)

(6) Takahashi and Tavassoli (1982)

¥

- (7) Karin and Mintz (1981)
- (8) De Abrew (1981)
- (9) Octave et al. (1982)

18.44

hepatoma cells contain 5 X 10^4 surface Tf binding sites and 1 X 10^5 internal sites. Thus the majority of Tf binding sites are internal. The total number of binding sites can be determined by performing birding studies at 37° C but this was not done in this study. The majority of experiments were performed at 4° C in order to examine binding as opposed to uptake of Tf.

4.3.2 _ Time course binding and uptake studies

The time course of the binding and uptake of ¹²⁵I-Tf by EL4-1 cells was performed at 4° C and at 37° C respectively (Fig. 24). Binding was rapid and a plateau was reached by 30 min at both 37° C and at 4° C ⁻ The curve at 37[°] C represents both binding and uptake of Tf. Numerous reports indicate that at 37° C bound Tf is internalized and the internal pool of " receptors is recycled to the surface of the cells for more binding to occur (section 2.9.2.3). In a subsequent experiment, cells were incubated at 37°, C for one h with 0.5 ug 125I-Tf. They were then centrifuged, washed 3 times and bound Tf was determined. Cells were then re-incubated at 37° C with 50 ug of unlabelled diferric Tf for 10 min and 40 min. After 10 min incubation, 34% of the label had been released into the medium; after 40 min, 82% of the label had been released indicating that Tf is taken up, presumably the Fe is removed and subsequently the Tf is released from the cells. Karin and Mintz (1981) studying murine teratocarcinoma cells found that 80% of cell-associated 125I-Tf was released after one h of incubation and was trichloroacetic acid insoluble indicating that there had been no gross degradation of ligand.

Fig. 24 Time course of transferrin binding by EL4-1 cells. EL4-1 cells were cultured and prepared as described in Fig. 23. Cells were added to microtiter wells containing 0.5 ug radiolabelled human Tf in RPMI with 0.1% BSA at 37° C (\blacksquare) and 4° C (\bullet). Binding was terminated at the indicated times.

A



Ð

0

Ě

0

1

¥

4.3.3 Competitive binding assays

In section 4.2.4, growth of EL4-1 cells on several different types of If was examined and it was found that of the If's tested human and murine If were the optimal Fe sources. Conalbumin and Lf could not be used and bovine Tf was not as good as human or murine Tf. In order to determine if this was because these compounds had a lower binding affinity, competitive binding studies were performed at 4° C (Table 8). In these studies, cells were added to control wells containing 0.5 ug of 125I-labelled Tf and test wells containing labelled Tf and 0.5, 5, or 25 ug of a competing unlabelled protein. It can be seen (Table 8) that when unlabelled human Tf was added to cells in an amount equal to radiolabelled Tf approximately 50% inhibition of binding occurred demonstrating that the iodination procedure did not alter the binding sites on the Tf or Tf binding to the receptors. Lf, conalbumin, and bovine Tf were not competitive with human Tf even when present at 50 times greater concentration. Zapolski and Princiotto (1976) found that human Lf and conalbumin could not supply rabbit reticulocytes with Fe for heme synthesis. Moreover, neither Lf nor conalbumin interfered with reticulocyte uptake of Fe from Tf. Messmer (1973a) studied the binding of human ¹²⁵I-Tf to V79 Chinese hamster fibroblasts and found that it required 120 times as much bovine Tf as human Tf to achieve 50% inhibition of labelled human Tf binding. It was also found in these studies that conalbumin did not compete significantly with human Tf for binding to these cells. 'The EL4-1 cells used in this assay had been grown in vitro in human To determine whether cells grown in fetal bovine serum and thus on Tf. bovine Tf responded in a similar manner, binding studies were performed

Effect of competition with unlabelled human, murine and bovine transferrin, lactoferrin and conalbumin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin to EL4-1 cells.¹

TABLE 8.

Ratio of labelled		• •	-
human to unlabelled	3 •	4	. \
Tf	1:1	1:10	1:50
Competing Ligand ²	с о	с с	
luman Tf	53.9 (3.1) ³	·13.7 (3.0)	1.0.
lurine Tf	94.5 (1.5)	82.0 (2.0)	64.0 (8.0)
ovine Tf	, 90:5 (2.1)	97.3 (2.8)	. 90.2 (2.1)
Lactoferrin	119.9 (3.4)	96.9 (3.9)	/ 94.0 (12.0)
onalbumin	127.4 (25.5)	96.0 (0.0)	101.0.(5.0)

¹EL4-1 cells were cultured *in vitro* in Fe-extracted RPMI with 0.3 uM diferric human Tf. Cells were harvested by centrifugation, washed once and then incubated for 90 min in Tf-free RPMI at 37° C to eliminate any internalized Tf. Cells were harvested and washed again at 4° C and added to wells containing 0.5 ug radiolabelled human Tf or labelled Tf and 0.5, 5 or 25 ug of an unlabelled ligand. Binding (4° , C) was terminated after 60 min. ²Numbers represent labelled Tf bound in the presence of unlabelled Tf as a percent of labelled Tf bound in the absence of unlabelled Tf. ³Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.

using the original EL4 cell line which had been cultured in RPMI 1640 with 10% F.B.S for two months (Table 9) Similar results were obtained Thus even though cells had been cultured in bovine serum for a prolonged period of time the cells preferentially bound human-Tf over bovine Tf. P This demonstrates that this Tf receptor preference is not unique to the EL4-1 line or produced by the selection for a serum-independent cell line. f_{avaler} et al. (1986) performed 4⁰ binding studies with K562 erythroleukemia cells and found that it required 2000 times as much bovine Tf to pbtain 50% inhibition of binding as for human Tf. Penhallow et al. (1986) reported that a ten-fold excess of ovoTf (conalbumin) or bovine Tf did not compete with human Tf for binding to human HeLa cells. 'These authors also performed a soluble receptor assay using 5 nM labelled human Tf and various compating levels of homologous and heterologous sera. With human serum, one-half maximal binding occurred at 6.5 nM Tf and with fetal calf serum one-half maximal binding occurred at 3000 nM Tf.

An interesting finding was that murine Tf did not compete as well as human Tf for binding to the receptors of these mouse cells although the cells grew well on murine Tf (section 4.2.4) The cells used for these initial binding studies were grown *in vitro* with human Tf. To rule out the fact that this might have had some effect on binding, cells were removed from the peritoneal cavity of a mouse and then cultured in either human or mouse Tf before binding studies were performed (Table 10). Virtually the same results were obtained as in Table 8; therefore the apparent preferential binding of human Tf was not due to pre-growth in media containing human Tf.

EL4-1 cells had originally been selected because they could grow in

TABLE 9. Effect of human, murine and bovine transferrin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin to the original EL4 cells.¹

	•	1
Ratio of labelled		-
to unlabelled Tf	1:1	1:10
	• •	-
<u>Competing</u> Ligand ²		· •
Human Tf	49.5 (4.0) ³	5.1 (1.8)
Murine Tf	100.ľ (0.5)	88.8 (0.4)
Bovine Tf	104.2 (2.4)	109.0 (0.5)
,		

¹EL4 cells were cultured *in vitro* for two months in RPMI 1640 with 10% F.B.S. Cells were prepared and binding assays performed as in Table 8. ²Numbers represent labelled Tf bound in the presence of competing Tf as a percent of labelled Tf bound in the absence of competing ligand. ³Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.

TABLE 10.

Effect of human and murine transferrin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin to EL4-1 cells cultured with human or murine transferrin as their Fe source.¹

°	Murine Tf grown cells		Human grown o	Tf cells
Ratio of labelled			۵.	·······
to unlabelled Tf	1:1	1:10	1:1	1:10
Competing Ligand ²		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
Human Tf	48.2 (2.2) ³	13.6 (1.8)	52.1 (1.5)	9.1 (1.1),
Murine Tf	101.8 (0.9)	84.9 (4.0)	100.6 (0.2)	81.7 (1.3)

t

¹EL4-1 cells were removed from the peritoneal cavity of a mouse and were cultured in vitro in RPMI 1640 containing 0.3 uM diferric human or mouse Tf for 48 h prior to the binding assay. The growth during this time represented 2.5 doublings. Details for the binding experiment were as in Table 8.

²Numbers represent labelled Tf bound in the presence of unlabelled (competing) Tf as a percent of labelled Tf bound in the absence of unlabelled Tf.

³Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.
RPMI synthetic medium and human Tf *in vitro*. For the results to be generalized it was necessary to know if the receptors on these cells were somehow different from other murine cells. Therefore competitive binding experiments were also carried out using YAC-1 cells, P815 cells and normal bone marrow cells from adult C57 black mice (Table 11). The relative response of all these cell types to murine and human Tf was similar

, Rich et al. (1981) compared the effect of human and mouse Tf's on in vitro growth of early BFU-E and late CFU-E erythetopoietic precursors in murine bone marrow. They found that mouse bone marrow cells have greater specificity for mouse Tf than human Tf as 950 TFU-E-colonies/10⁵ cells were obtained using mouse Tf and 650 CFU-E colonies/ 10^5 cells were obtained with Lappin et al. (1985) "also found that mouse Tf was more human Tf. stimulatory than human Tf in the mouse spleen cell microassay for estimation of erythropoietin. Rich et al. (1981) suggested that mouse Tf is to bind cell receptors and transfer Fe to proliferating and . better able differentiating murine erythroid cells than human Tf. It is difficult, however, to compare growth studies in which only one type of Tf is present over a relatively long period of time with competition studies at 4^Q C in which two types of Tf are present simultaneously for a short period of time. In the present studies, EL4-1 cells grew equally well on human and murine Tf but when both were present in binding studies human Tf was Also, it is difficult to compare tumor cells with, preferentially bound. erythroid cells as erythroid cells have a much higher Fe requirement for hemoglobin synthesis. Lane (1972) found that only half as much human Tf was bound to rabbit reticulocytes as rabbit Tf and suggested that fewer receptors can bind human Tf because the molecule is larger and when bound

TABLE 11.

Effect of unlabelled human and murine transferrin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin to EL4-1,

P815, YAC-1 and normal murine bone marrow cells.¹

%	Human Ti	f as the competing	; ligand
Ratio of labelled			
to unlabelled Tf	1:1	1:10	1:50
Cell type °	•	•	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		ه
EL4-1 ²	49.4 (1.5) ³	10.9 (2.5)	2.0 (0.6)
P815	45.6 (2.0)	10)9 (0.8)	2.4 (0.5)
YAC-1	60.2 (1.8)	15.5 (2.3)	3.8
Bone Marrow	48.1 (3.0)	19.1 (2.9)	- · ·
	Murine T	f as the competing	g ligand
Ratio of labelled		. ·	з
to unlabelled Tf	* 1:1	. 1:10	1:50
Cell type 、			<i>.</i>
EL4-1 .	101.8 (3.0)	91.0 (2.6)	62.9 (4.2) *
P815	93.8 (1.4)	84.9 (5.2)	63.9 (6.1)
YAC-1	100.0 (2.0)	91.3 (1.8)	71.2 (2.5)
Bone Marrow	∲ 98.5 (2.5)	100.6 (4.4)	65.7 (6.6)
		- <u>-</u>	······

¹EL4-1 cells were cultured as described in Table 8. P815 and YAC-1 cells were maintained in RPMI 1640 with 10% F.B.S Murine bone marrow cells were obtained from adult C57 mice as described in section 3.2. Cells were prepared for the assay and the assays performed as described for Table 8. ²Numbers represent labelled Tf bound in the presence of unlabelled (competing) Tf as a percent of labelled Tf bound in the absence of unlabelled Tf.

³Numbers in parentheses represent the <u>st</u>andard error of the mean.

inhibits binding of other molecules to adjacent binding sites. The results from the present study might be unique to the particular mouse Tf used i.e. to its murine source or purification procedure. However, the protein was pure as determined by SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, bound Fe like human Tf, as determined by absorbance at 465 nm, and the EL4-1 cells were able to grow well on it. Perhaps human Tf binds more readily to murine receptors because of its molecular weight and/or conformation but does not release Fe as readily intracellularly. Thus mouse Tf might remain a better Fe source for growth and differentiation of murine erythroid cells with their high Fe requirements. There is at present no evidence for this.

4.3.4 The effect of deglycosylation of transferrin on binding

Transferrin is a glycoprotein and human Tf contains 6% carbohydrate. The molecule contains two branched carbohydrate chains which terminate in sialic acid residues; the carbohydrate chains are found in the C-terminal half of the molecule attached to asparagine residues 413 and 611 et al., 1983). (MacGillivray The proportion of carbohydrate varies, however, among the different species of Tf's. Hatton et al. (1974) determined the carbohydrate content of bovine, porcine, rabbit and dog Tf's and found that human Tf has twice the amount of carbohydrate as these species. Conalbumin has only one carbohydrate chain consisting of 4 residues of mannose and 8 of N-acetylglucosamine. Chicken serotransferrin, on the other hand also contains one carbohydrate chain but consists of two galactose, two mannose, 3 N-acetylglucosamine and one or two residues of sialic acid (Williams, 1968). Carbohydrates on proteins are postulated to have several

functions including: labelling of secreted proteins for export, recognition of proteins by target cells or protection against proteolytic damage (Olden *et al.* 1982).

Since the carbohydrate content of Tf varies among species and since there are definite differences in the binding of various species of Tf to cell receptors the importance of the carbohydrate chain of the Tf molecule in receptor recognition of the ligand was examined. Human Tf was deglycosylated using the enzyme N-glycanase, obtained from Genzyme Corp and the deglycosylated Tf was used in competition binding studies (Table 12A) That the carbohydrate had been removed was ascertained by running native and deglycosylated Tf's on an SDS-polyacrylamide gel, silver staining the gel and looking for a single band of decreased molecular weight (Fig 25A). Examination of the gel revealed that the majority of the protein was deglycosylated. On the gel in the lanes in which deglycosylated Tf was run The faint band of highest molecular weight is three bands are apparent believed to be a small quantity of native non-deglycosylated Tf The two lower molecular weight bands are thought to represent mono and dideglycosylated Tf, that is, Tf from which one and two oligosaccharide Deglycosylation was further examined by Pardo chains have been removed. Pannunzio of this department using a Western blotting procedure. The Tf's were run on a SDS-polyacrylamide gel, were blotted onto nitrocellulose paper and probed with concanavalin A coupled to horseradish peroxidase The results in Fig. 25B, confirm that the enzymatic deglycosylation was successful. The deglycosylated protein was as competitive as native human If when added in concentrations equal to Tabelled ligand but was somewhat less competitive when a 10-fold excess was used. The results of the 1:1

Fig 25A

A comparison of native and deglycosylated human transferrin by sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. Native and deglycosylated human Tf were run on SDS-PAGE as described in section 3.9. The gel was subsequently stained using the silver staining method.

Lane 1-deglycosylated human Tf (2.6 ug), Lane 2-deglycosylated human Tf (1.3 ug) Lane 3-native human Tf (2 ug) Lane 4-native human Tf (1 ug) Lane M-low molecular weight markers. 3 . 1 2 8 4 M

43 K
30 K
20.1 K
14.4 K

۷٨

⊲ 94 K

◄ 67 K

25B A comparison of `native and deglycosylated human and murine transferrins by Western blotting. The Tf's were run on SDS-PAGE, blotted onto nitrocellulose paper and probed with concanavalin A coupled to horseradish peroxidase.

(mal)

Lane 1-deglycosylated murine Tf Lane 2-native murine Tf Lane 3-deglycosylated human Tf Lane 4-native human Tf.

ŧ,

Fig.



. . . •

TABLE 12A.

Effect of native human and deglycosylated human transferrin

on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin

•	to EL4-1 cells ¹ .	• ' ,
	٩	
Ratio of labelled to		
unlabelled Tf	· 1:1	1:10
Competing Ligand ²		9 r
Human Tf	61.5 (2.5) ³	14.8 (0.4)
Deglycosylated	١	• •
human Tf	67.4 (2.4)	35.3 (3.5)
Å	, ```	

¹EL4-1 cells were cultured and prepared for the assay as described in Table 8. Control wells contained 0.5 ug labelled Tf, test wells contained labelled Tf and 0.5 or 5 ug of either native or deglycosylated Tf. Binding proceeded for 60 min at 4° C.

 2 Values represent labelled Tf bound in the presence of competing Tf as a percent of labelled Tf bound in the absence of competing ligand. ³Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.

۴.,

competition suggest that the deglycosylated Tf binds as well as native Tf. At a 1:10 ratio the deglycosylated Tf demonstrates good competitit but is not as competitive as native Tf. The six per cent decrease in molecular weight may make it somewhat less competitive with the larger native molecule, this being more evident at higher competitive ratios. Alternatively, removing the carbohydrate from the molecule may affect the charge of the molecule causing it to adhere to non-receptor sites or other protein molecules. Similar studies were performed using murine Tf (Table 12B). There appeared to be no difference in molecular weight between native and deglycosylated murine Tf on an SDS-polyacrylamide gel (data not shown). This suggests that murine Tf has a lower carbohydrate content and therefore the decrease in molecular weight due to deglycosylation was not enough to Western blotting, however (Fig. 25B), revealed that be seen on a gel. murine Tf was successfully deglycosylated. Deglycosylation of the mouse Tf did not improve its binding to EL4.1 cells; it was still not competitive with human Tf in competition assays (Table 12B).

These results suggest that the carbohydrate chain does not have a role in either receptor recognition or binding of Tf to the tumor cell receptors. The carbohydrate chain may have a role in labelling Tf for secretion from hepatocytes or in protecting the molecule from proteolytic degradation. Urushizaki *et al.* (1984) found using Scatchard plot analysis that there was no difference in binding of siblo- and asialo-Tf to the Tf receptors of K562 cells. Kornfeld (1968) removed all the sialic acid residues from human Tf and found that this treatment did not affect the uptake of Fe by rabbit reticulocytes. The carbohydrate was further removed enzymatically using beta-galactosidase, alpha-manhosidase, and beta-N-

TABLE 12B.

Effect of native murine and deglycosylated murine transferrin on the binding of radiolabelled human transferrin

to EL4-1 cells¹.

Ratio of labelled to	,	* 94, i - j	¥ - `	
unlabelled Tf	1:1	٩	1:10 -	-
Competing Ligand ²	l.		۰,	
Native human Tf	$65.9(0.9)^3$		14.9 (1.8)	
Native murine Tf	103.0 (1.5)		92.4 (0.4)	
Deglycosylated	\$	-		
murine Tf	102.2 (0.7)	\ `	102,3 (1.5)	

¹EL4-1 cells were cultured and prepared for the assay and the assay was carried out as described in Table 12A.

 2 Values represent labelled Tf bound in the presence of competing Tf as a percent of labelled Tf bound in the absence of competing ligand. ³Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.

acetylglucosaminidase. Tf preparations which had 39 and 47% of their remaining sugar residues removed were able to donate Fe to reticulocytes in a normal fashion. It was also found that isolated heterosaccharide chains did not interfere with the ability of Tf to donate Fe to reticulocytes. Hemmaplardh and Morgan (1976) theated rabbit reticulocytes with neuraminidase in order to release 30-50% of the membrane sialic acid. This treatment had no effect on Fe or Tf uptake or incorporation of Fe into heme. The authors concluded if sialic acid is present on the Tf receptor it is not important in its interaction with the Tf protein.

In very recent studies, Reckhow and Enns (1987) incubated A431 human carcinoma cells with tunicamycin, an antibiotic which inhibits glycosylation; this prevented formation of disulfide bonds between the two receptor subunits. The resulting monomeric unglycosylated receptor could, not bind Tf and was not transported to the cell surface. Thus removal of receptor carbohydrate from receptors already *in situ* and preventing initial glycosylation have very different effects. The results of Reckhow and Enns suggest that the carbohydrate labels the receptors for translocation to the cell surface and that the carbohydrate chains are important in inserting the <u>receptor</u> in the membrane in the correct orientation. The disulfide bonds are probably important in stabilizing the proper receptor conforma-

tion.

Binding of transferrin to Neisseria meningitidis

4.4.1 Rationale for binding studies

4.4

The pathogen Neisseria meningitidis can obtain Fe from Tf, not by the production of siderophores and outer membrane siderophore receptor proteins but by binding Tf directly (Archibald and DeVoe, 1979). Holbein (1980), in the mouse model of meningococcal infection, demonstrated that the hypoferremic response was important in controlling N. meningitidis infection. Subsequently, Simonson et al. (1982) demonstrated that when N. meningitidis was presented with 30% saturated Tf or apo-Tf at physiological concentrations the same number of Tf molecules were bound. These authors also showed that a twenty-fold excess of apo-Tf inhibited Fe uptake from 30%-saturated Tf by over 90%.

The results of these authors together with the results obtained in this work which suggest that the hypoferremic response has little inhibitory effect on tumor cell Fe acquisition led to the following hypothesis. The hypoferremic response is effective in limiting infection with N. meningitidis and has little effect on the growth of eucaryotic tumor cells because of the difference in the ability of the two receptor systems to distinguish between ferric and apo-Tf. This ability is very important in the case of tumor cells which have a very high affinity for diferric Tf and a much lower affinity for apo-Tf and it is suggested that the procaryotic neisserial receptors are less able to discriminate between Fe-bearing and Fe-free Tf. Thus in the case of meningococcal infection host hypoferremia is beneficial in opposing the pathogen.

In the next phase of the work, several aspects of the binding of Tf to the pathogen N. meningitidis were examined.

4.4.2 Plate assays

Í

Initially, it was verified that this bacterium could utilize Fe from Tf when Fe-starved and that the non-pathogen Neisseria subflava could not. This was doned using plate assays in Mueller-Hinton agar (MHA) containing ethylene-diamine-di-ortho-hydroxyphenyl acetic acid (EDDA) to sequester The cultures were plated by the spread plate method. Wells medium Fe. were made in the agar and charged with various amounts of Tf having 100%, 50%, 25% or 0% Fe saturation and then plates were incubated. The results are shown in Fig. 26A and B and Table 13. In Table 13, results are expressed as the area of the zone of growth or growth inhibition. Ν. meningitidis was able to grow on unsaturated Tf (50%, 25%) while these unsaturated Tf's caused growth inhibition of the non-pathogen N. subflava, the area of growth inhibition being proportional to the degree of unsaturation of the protein. It was also found, using similar plate assays, that the meningococcus could obtain Fe from 50% saturated Lf but not from 50% saturated conalbumin. On the other hand, N. subflava was growth inhibited by both unsaturated proteins. N. meningitidis could utilize bovine Tf Fe but only at higher Tf levels than for human Tf suggesting that N. meningitidis, a human pathogen, has a preference for human Tf.

Mickelsen and Sparling (1981) examined 21 strains of N. meningitidis, 29 strains of N. gonorrhoeae and 45 commensal neisserial strains and found that all of the strains of pathogenic neisseriae could obtain Fe from 25%-

Photographs of plate assays demonstrating the nutritional availability of Fe from various transferring for N. meningitidis. Mueller-Hinton agar plates contained 3 umol EDDA \times umol⁻¹ Fe.

Top:

Well 1-286 ug human Tf 100% saturated Well 2-571 ug human Tf 100% saturated Well 3-571 ug human Tf 50% saturated Well 4-571 ug human Tf 0% saturated Well 5-571 ug human Tf 25% saturated

Bottom:

Well 1-286 ug human Tf 50% saturated Well 2-286 ug conalbumin 50% saturated Well 3-143 ug conalbumin 100% saturated Well 4-286 ug human Lf 50% saturated Well 5-143 ug human Lf 100% saturated

Fig, 26A

•

).

· · ·



· - 3



3

2

Fig. 26B

Top:

Photographs of plate assays demonstrating the nutritional availability of Fe from various transferring for N. subflava. Mueller-Hinton agar plates contained 2 unol EDDA umol⁻¹ Fe.

> Well 1-286 ug human Tf 50% saturated Well 2-143 ug human Lf 100% saturated Well 3-286 ug human Lf 50% saturated Well 4-143 ug conalbumin 100% saturated Well 5-286 ug conalbumin 50% saturated

Bottom: /.

saturated	100%	human Tf	i ug	1-286	Well
saturated	100%	Human Tf	, ug	2-571	Well
saturated	0%	human 矩	ug	3-571	Well
saturated	25%	human Tf	ug	4-571	Well
saturated	50%	human Tf	ug	5-571	Well

T)



TABLE 13.

. ۵

Nutritional availability of Fe bound to various transferrin proteins to N. meningitidis and N. subflava.

Type of .	total	% Fe	. total (growth respons	e (area mm ²) -
Tf used	ug protein	satur-	ug Fe	N. meningitidis	'N. subflava
, 	per well	ation	per well	· · ·	
Human Tf	· 286	100	0.4	$170 - E^2$	· 0·
Human Tf	571	100	0.8	200-е	
Human Tf	571 `	50	0.4	- 200-E *	90-I ³
Human Tf	571	25	0.2	200 - E	180-I
Human Tf	571	0	۵.0	ο .	240-I
-	N") 	ំ ប	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	·
Human Tf	286	50	0.2	140 - E	240 - I
Human Lf	143	100	0.2	्र 40 - ह्	` 0
Human Lf	286	50	0.2	40 = E	160-1
Conalbumin	143	100	0.2	80-E	0
Conalbumin	286	50	0.2	0	240 - I
Human Tf	286	50	0.2	⁻ 260 - E	-
Bovine Tf	286	50	0.2	0	•
Bovine Tf	571	_ 5 0	0.4	100-E	、
Bovine Tf	1142	50	0.8	130-E	~
	~				• •

¹Cells from cultures grown on MHA plates were suspended in MHB containing 7

₹52

ug ml⁻¹ EDDA and plated on MHA plates containing 2.0 umol EDDA umol⁻¹ Fe for N. subflava and 3.0 umol EDDA umol⁻¹ Fe for N. meningitidis. Cultures were plated by the spread plate method. Wells of approximately 5 m in diameter were made in the agar, then the desired amount of Tf was added. Plates were incubated at 37° C with 5% CO₂. N. meningitidis plates were incubated for 18 h, except for the plate with bovine Tf which was incubated 46 h, N. subflava plates were incubated 30 h. ²Growth enhancement.

³Growth inhibition.

153

frig.

saturated Tf but only 22% of the non-pathogenic neisseriae could do so. Simonson *et al.* (1982) found that *N. sicca* and *N. flava* could not take up Fe from 30%-saturated ⁵⁹Fe-Tf even when these cultures were starved for Fe. Mickelsen and Sparling (1981) also found that none of the neisseriae strains tested could obtain Fe from 25% Fe-saturated conalbumin. Mickelsen *et al.* (1982) found that all *N. meningitidis* strains tested could utilize Lf Fe for growth but only 53% of *N. gonorrhoeae* strains and 24% of commensal strains tested could do so. An important question arose from the results of the plate assays: can *Neisseria* subflava not utilize Tf-Fe because it cannot bind to Tf or because it is unable to remove Fe from the

- 154

4.4.3 Enumeration of Neisseria meningitidis transferrin binding sites

phase of the work, 4° C binding studies were performed with In this N. meningitidis in order to determine the number of cellular If binding sites and their Tf dissociation constant (K_d) as was done for the EL4-1 cells (section 4.3.1). In an initial experiment, this was done in a manner identical to that used for the EL4-1 cells using very low ligand concentrations. A Scatchard plot revealed 14 molecules of Tf bound per cell (Fig. This value for the number of binding sites seemed extremely low 27). Ιf the affinity of the neisserial receptor is not as high as in the eucaryotic system perhaps higher concentrations of Tf are required to obtain significant binding. The experiment was repeated using higher available Tf concentrations (Fig. 28). The average linear range for these Scatchard plots was from 2 to 63 ug. The number of binding sites per cell was 252

Fig. 27

A Scatchard plot of binding of radiolabelled human diferric transferrin to N. meningitidis cells at 4° C. N. meningitidis cells were grown in MHB then harvested and resuspended in RPMI with 0.1% BSA. Cells (2.6 X 10^{9}) were added to microtiter wells containing various levels' of 125 I-labelled human Tf as described in Fig 23 for EL4-1 cells. Binding proceeded for 30 %min at 4° C.

ť



٩<u>.</u>

£.

Fig. 28

Binding of radiolabelled diferric human transferrin to N. meningitidis cells at 4° C as a function of available transferrin concentration N. meningitidis cells were grown in MHB, harvested and washed in NDM with 0.1% BSA. Cells (5 X 10^9) were added to microtiter wells containing different amounts of labelled Tf in NDM with BSA at 4° C. Binding proceeded for 30 min at this temperature. Data points represent the average of 4 experiments. The Tf concentration on the X-axis represents Tf available in pmol in a final volume of 200 ul. This would represent 0-4000 nM available Tf. Inset: A Scatchard plot of the above data.



and the K_d was 7.5 X 10⁻⁸ M. Most of the experiments with *N. meningitidis* were performed at 4° C in order that comparisons with the tumor cell work could be made. Also in these studies a relatively high cell number was used (5 X 10⁹ cells per well); by performing assays at 4° C problems due to cellular autolysis and production of metabolic acid by the cells were prevented.

In order to evaluate the effect of Fe deprivation on Tf binding to the meningococcal cells, similar studies were carried out comparing Fe-sufficient and Fe-deprived cells grown in MH-EDDA for 4 h (Table 14 and Fig. 29). It was found that the number of binding sites was significantly higher in Fe-deprived as compared to Fe-sufficient cells (Student's t-test t--3.54, p < 0.05). The K_d 's of the two groups were not, however, significantly different.

Although 356 Tf binding sites is significantly higher than 136 it might be questioned whether 356 is significantly higher than 252 binding sites. There is a certain degree of variation in the number of Tf binding sites per cell from experiment to experiment. This results from some variation in the cells themselves and amount of binding varies with the age of the labelled Tf used. Thus only Fe-deprived and Fe-sufficient cells which have been prepared and assayed at the same time can be compared. This was done in the above experiments and it was demonstrated that there was a significant difference in the number of Tf binding sites between Fedeprived and Fe-sufficient meningococcal cells.

Simonson *et al.* (1982) measured binding of 125 I-labelled 30[°] Fesaturated Tf at a concentration of 2.5 mg ml⁻¹ under Fe-sufficient and Federived conditions and found that 4.5 X 10^{4} and 4.6 X 10^{4} molecules of Tf

INDUD 14.	TA	BLE	14	
-----------	----	-----	----	--

Binding of human transferrin to Fe-sufficient and Fe-deprived N. meningitidis¹.

Fe-Sufficient Cells	Ø	Fe-Deprived Cells	·
Binding Sites per Cell	ĸ _d	Binding Sites per Cell	К _а
136 (11.5) ²	9.7, X 10 ⁻⁸	356 (61.0)	7 [.] .0 x 10 ⁻⁸

¹N. meningitidis was cultured in MHB for 16 h. Aliquots of this culture were centrifuged and washed once. in either MHB or MHB with, 3.0 umol EDDA umol⁻¹ Fe before inoculation into these same media. Cells were incubated for 4 h at 37° C (5% CO₂, 100 rpm) then harvested by centrifugation. Subsequently, the cells were washed in NDM with 0.1% BSA (4° C) and resuspended in this medium at the same temperature. Cells were added to microtiter wells prepared as follows. Four mg unlabelled diferric Tf was added to well one in NDM containing 0.1% BSA. This was serially diluted two-fold in this same medium to well 12. 0.5 ug ¹²⁵I-labelled diferric Tf was then added to each well and the contents were mixed. Binding proceeded at 4° C for 30 min; cells were harvested as described in section 3.10.3. ²Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean. Values are the average of three separate experiments. Scatchard plots of binding data for Fe-sufficient and Fedeprived N. meningitidis cells. N. meningitidis was cultured for 4 h in MHB or MHB containing 3 unol EDDA per unol Fe to obtain Fe-sufficient (\blacksquare) and Fe-deprived (\square) cells respectively. Cells were harvested and binding was performed as in Fig. 28. The abscissa intercepts represent pmol Tf bound per 5 X 10⁹ cells. The data is averaged from 3 experiments.

Fig. . 29



respectively were bound per cell. This is a much higher level of binding than obtained in the present studies but the linear Tf concentration range for the Scatchard plot was much lower 3.9-0.13 uM as opposed to 31.25 uM. This further suggests that the amount of Tf bound is dependent on the available Tf concentration. There are two possible explanations for the differing results concerning Fe-deprivation in these, two studies. Perhaps the enhanced effect on binding is evident only at the lower ligand concentrations 'used in the present studies'. Also in these studies, 18 ug ml⁻¹ EDDA was added to the medium while 7 ug ml⁻¹ were used in the studies of Simonson *et al.* (1982). The higher concentration of EDDA used in the present studies may have caused increased Fe-deprivation which resulted in enhanced binding.

If binding to the meningococcus was subsequently examined at physiological Tf levels in a microassay at both 4° C and 37° C to ascertain whether temperature had an effect on the amount of Tf bound. Cells (1.2 X 10⁹) were added to either 200 ul NDM or 200 ul NDM with 0.1% BSA containing 500 ug Tf. Binding was terminated after 30 min incubation of cells (100 rpm) by adding the cells to a 20-fold excess of unlabelled diferric Tf Fewer molecules of Tf were bound at 37° C than at 4° C; per-(Table 15) haps at the higher temperature Tf leaves the receptor more, rapidly. The addition of 0.1% BSA to the medium resulted in a substantial decrease in the number of molecules of Tf binding to the cells. This suggests that in the absence of BSA there is a component of non-specific binding of Tf to Compared to the results obtained with Scatchard analysis, the cells. roughly ten times more Tf was bound using the higher physiological levels of Tf. This higher level of total binding probably represents the sum of

Binding of tra	nsferrin to N. mer	<i>ingitidis</i> at 4 ⁰ C and	at 37° C ¹ .
	C	[•] 37 [°]	C
pmol Tf bound per 1:2 X 10 ⁹ cells	binding sites per cell	pmol Tf bound∘ per 1.2 X 10 ⁹ cells	binding sites per cell
NDM 8.6 (0.4) ²	4330 (221)	6.7 (0.4)	3512 ₍₁₇₅₎
NDM 8.5 (0.9)	4228 (439)	5.7 (0.4)	2860 (192).
5.2 (0.7)	2662 ·(353)	3.8 (1.6)	1879 (822)

TABLE 15

¹N. meningitidis was cultured in MHB for 16 h. Cells were harvested and weished as described in section 3.10.2 and resuspended in either NDM or NDM with 0.1% BSA. At zero time 1.2 X 10^9 cells were added to vials containing physiological levels of radiolabelled human Tf in a final volume of 200 ul of NDM or NDM with BSA. Cells were incubated for 30 min at either 37° C or 4° C (100 rpm). Binding was terminated by adding the cells to microcentrifuge tubes containing a 20-fold excess of unlabelled diferric Tf. ²Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.

high affinity binding sites revealed by Scatchard analysis and (perhaps a population of lower affinity binding sites. It is possible that Tf may bind with a lower affinity.to other cellular binding sites, for example, there might be a certain degree of cross-reactivity with the cellular Lf binding sites (see Table 16). This would only be evident at higher Tf concentrations as Scatchard analysis reveals only high affinity binding sites. In performing the Scatchard analysis (Fig. 28) non-specific binding was corrected for using the method of Chamness and McGuire (1975). However, with physiological Tf levels even in the presence of 0.1% BSA there is probably some degree of non-specific binding of Tf to the cells In the absence of the many other serum proteins found in vivo which may further compete for non-specific binding to the cells. This number of binding lower than that found by Simonson et al. sites is still However, several aspects of the present experiments and those of Simonson et al. were different and might account for the differences in the number of binding sites. The degree of Tf Fe saturation was 100% in these studies and 30% in . the earlier studies of Simonson et al. The method of iodination was different im the two studies and the iodinated proteins were prepared to different specific activities. In the studies of Simonson et al., BSA or other serum proteins were not included in the medium to minimize nonspecific binding. Therefore some of the binding observed may have been non-specific. The possibility that the organism itself had changed somewhat by subsequent in vitro passage also cannot be ruled out. The important point is that both studies indeed demonstrate that Neisseria meningitidis does directly bind Tf and this is how Fe is obtained.

Similar binding studies were performed with both N. subflava and E.

In both cases there was no specific binding of Tf to the cells as coli. there was for N. meningitidis. With both E. coli and N. subflava binding studies were performed as for N. meningitidis in microtiter wells in NDM containing 0.1% BSA by adding 4 mg unlabelled diferric Tf to well one and performing serial two-fold dilutions to well 12. Subsequently, 0.5 ug 125 I-labelled diferric Tf was added to each well and mixed with the unlabelled Tf. With both E. coli and N. subflava the number of counts bound to the cells in each well varied randomly from well to well. There was no increase in binding of radiolabelled Tf with decreasing concentration of unlabelled ligand suggesting no competition for a common binding site as there was for N. meningitidis. In the case of N. subflava, the number of counts per well ranged from 44 to 82 cpm above the counter background (approximately 30 cpm). For E. coli, counts varied from 58 to 250 cpm above background With both these organisms this small degree of binding was interpreted to represent non specific binding to the cells. It would not be expected that E. coli would be able to bind Tf as this organism has evolved other high-affinity Fe acquisition mechanisms involving the syncorresponding outer membrane siderophoresiderophores and thesis of receptor proteins. As discussed in section 2,9.1, siderophores have a high affinity for Fe and are thus able to remove Fe from Tf and transport it to the bacterial cell.

These findings are interesting as they reveal a major difference between the pathogenic Neisseria meningitidis and the commensal Neisseria subflava, the ability to bind and obtain Fe from the serum protein Tf. Presumably, this is because the pathogen has the ability to synthesize outer membrane Tf receptor binding sites and the non-pathogen lacks this

ability. This might therefore be an important characteristic of virulence for N. meningitidis.

4.4.4 Time course binding

Time course binding studies were performed with the meningococcus at 4^o C only (Fig. 30). Binding was found to be rapid as maximal binding was achieved after 5 min. A zero time point was not included; it was not possible to accurately measure zero time binding as cells had to be removed from the wells into microcentrifuge tubes, centrifuged and washed. The earliest time point that could accurately be measured was two min.

4.4.5 Competitive binding assays

Competitive binding assays were performed on the meningococcus in a manner similar to that used for the tumor cells except that in the control wells 0.5 ug of labelled diferric Tf was mixed with 69.5 ug of unlabelled diferric Tf. This concentration of ligand was used to ensure saturation of binding sites. Competing proteins in test wells included diferric and apo human Tf, human Lf and conalbumin added in concentrations of 70 or 700 ug. Competition assays were performed on both Fe-sufficient and Fe-deprived cells (Table 16) and similar results were obtained in both cases. The results for human diferric Tf were as expected, the addition of an equivalent amount of unlabelled diferric Tf resulted in close to 50% inhibition of binding. Apo-Tf offered as much inhibition as did diferric Tf. This suggests that neisserial receptors do not discriminate between ferri and

Fig. 30

Time course binding of diferric human transferrin to N. meningitidis cells at 4° C. Cultures of N. meningitidis cells were prepared as described in Fig. 28. Cells were added to wells containing 70 ug 125 I-labelled human Tf in NDM containing BSA in a final volume of 200 ul at 4° C. The Tf concentration was therefore 350 ug ml⁻¹ or 4.4 uM. Binding was terminated at the indicated times.


TABLE 16.

Effect of human transferrin, lactoferrin and conalbumin on the hinding of radiolabelled human transferrin to N. meninglifidis grown under Fe-sufficient and Fe-deprived conditions.¹

Ratio of labelled γ	•	· · · · ·
to unlabelled Tf	Fe-sufficient Cells	Fe-deprived Cells "
· · ·		, , ,
Competing Ligand ²	¥	نام الم د -
1:1 Human Tf	52.8 (3.1) ³	52.6 (4.7)
1:1 Human Apo-Tf	,50.9 (10.1)	
1:10 Human Tf	13.2 (3.2)	8.9 (1.3)
1:1 Human Lf	85.7 (5.9)	86.6 (2.1)
1:10 Human Lf	83.7 (10.3)	85.4 (2.7)
1:1 Conalbumin	73.4 (3.9)	- حسن -
1:10 Conalbumin 🥣 🚬	86,6 (1.9)	•
	· · ·	,

¹Cultures were grown and prepared as described in section 3.10.3 and Table 14. Control wells contained 70 ug labelled-Tf in a final volume of 200 ul (350 ug ml⁻¹ or 4.4 uh Tf); this concentration represents 11.6% of the physiological Tf concentration. Test wells contained labelled Tf and either an equivalent amount of unlabelled competing protein of a ten-fold excess. Binding was carried out at 4° C for 30 min. With the exception of apo-Tf, all proteins including radiolabelled Tf were prepared to 100% saturation.

.166

²Values represent labelled Tf bound in the presence of unlabelled (competing) Tf as a percent of labelled Tf bound in the absence of unlabelled Tf. ³Numbers in parentheses represent the standard error of the

¢ ð

5

mean.

apo-Tf to the same degree as eucaryotic Tf receptors.

Lf, when added to cells at a concentration equal to that of human Tf, A ten-fold greater concentration, however, offered about 15% inhibition. offered no further^a competition. The results of the plate assays demonstrated that these bacteria are able to utilize Lf Fe. The binding results suggest that there are two separate sites or binding systems for Tf and Lf. Since Lf did offer 15% inhibition to Tf binding there must be a certain degree of cross-reactivity i.e. Lf can bind to some of the Tf binding sites but further addition of Lf caused no more binding to these few sites. Alternatively, when Lf is bound to its specific sites on the cell this may cause steric inhibition of Tf binding to a small proportion of its binding sites. Mickelsen *°et al*. (1982) examined Fe acquisition in N. gonorrhoeae and found that all gonococcal strains studied could obtain Fe from Tf but only certain ones could obtain Fe from Lf. These authors therefore also suggested that two independent Fe acquisition systems are involved in obtaining Fe from TS and Lf. Conalbumin also appeared to be competitive in our assays although according to results from our plate assays this bacterium cannot obtain Fe from this protein. Conalbumin may have caused inhibition of Tf binding by some form of steric hindrance or inhibition rather than by specific occupation of cellular binding sites. It is also possible that the binding of conalbumin represents a lack of specificity in the binding of Tf to neisserial receptors.

168

5.GENERAL DISCUSSION, SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

5.1 Introduction -

In any disease process such as infection, cancer, or other form of chronic disease, the response or lack of response on the part of the host is of great importance. Profound changes in host Fe metabolism occur due to inflammation, infection, and malignancy. One of the major changes is the occurrence of the hypoferremic response. It has been established for some time that this response is beneficial during infection and has been regarded as a host response to deny invading pathogens necessary Fe, a concept termed nutritional immunity. This form of nutritional immunity is very effective in helping to control Neisseria meningitidis infection in As this organism obtains Fe by binding Tf directly as tumor cells mice. do, it had been suggested that hypoferremia might also withhold Fe from tumor cells (Weinberg, 1981; 1984). It was postulated that if this was the case that ' hypoferremia could be created or augmented as an adjunct to other forms of neoplastic therapy. For example, BCG or Corynebacterium parvum might have been useful' agents in causing or increasing hypoferremia in an experimental model. Alternatively, as Fe is required for growth, perhaps tumor cell Fe acquisition could be specifically interfered with in some manner.

The EL4 tumor model proved to be an appropriate one for this study. This is a tumor of C57 black mice and Fe metabolism in these mice has been well-characterized in previous studies (Holbein *et al.*, 1979; Holbein, 1980; 1981; Letendre and Holbein 1983; 1984; 1984a). Several manifesta-

tions of clinical neoplastic disease were exhibited in mice bearing this tumor including: hypoferremia, anemia and a decrease in organ weight late in the disease process. As the tumor was an ascites tumor it was convenient to count peritoneal tumor cells to monitor *in vivo* growth and also to transfer cells to tissue culture for *in vitro* growth. The ability of the cells to grow *in vitro* in tissue culture media with human Tf instead of serum was a distinct advantage as cells could be cultured and growth assessed in a simple, well-defined system.

5.2 Initial studies

Initial experiments showed that although there was a marked hypoferits onset was late in the course of disease after much tumor cell remia. proliferation had occurred. If LEM or IL-1 is the triggering agent for the hypoferremic response, stimulation of peritoneal macrophages would be required for the synthesis and release of this compound and the results suggest that this did not occur until the tumor burden was very high. It would appear that it is only when the peritoneal cavity is extremely crowded with tumor cells that an inflammatory response occurs in the peritoneal cavity. As hypoferremia is only one aspect of the entire host inflammatory response this suggests that other aspects of the host response may also be suppressed during neoplasia. Numerous mechanisms have been postulated whereby tumor cells evade the host immune response. Tumor cells, although they do possess distinct tumor-associated antigens, arise from host tissue and may be antigenically similar to other host cells. Tumor cells may shed antigens which can form blocking immune complexes or

-170

malignant cells may release immunosuppressive factors. Invasion of the bone marrow by tumor cells may cause inhibition of production of macrophages and other cells of the immune system. It is not known in this murine ascites cell system which factor(s) account for the late onset of the inflammatory response.

The mechanism of the occurrence of hypoferremia was not examined in these studies. It was assumed that as in infection and inflammation it occurred due to impaired re-entry of senescent erythrocyte-derived Fe into the Tf pool. The cause of anemia in this tumor model was also not explored but was most likely due to the decrease in available Fe delivered to the bone marrow although as stated in section 2.6 there are several other factors which may contribute to manemia during neoplastic disease.

A considerable amount of work has been done to explore the use of monitoring serum Cp levels as a marker for malignant disease. Letendre and Holbein (1984a) suggested that serum Cp levels increase during the convalescent phase of infection following hypoferremia to re-establish normal serum Fe levels. In this tumor model, serum Cp levels rose somewhat early. in the disease before the onset of hypoferremia; the reason for this is The Cp levels in tumor-bearing mice were not significantly difunknown. ferent from those of control mice at any of the time points examined. There was no recovery phase to this disease process as there was for meningococcal infection in mice; the serum Fe levels continued to decline until the death of the mice. One could postulate in terms of Letendre and Holbein's theory that as there was no recovery phase there was no host response to increase serum Fe levels and therefore no increase in Cp levels. To further evaluate the role of Cp in Fe metabolism it would be

interesting to monitor serum Cp and Fe levels in an experimental system in which the animals' condition was improved by removal of the tumor or by radio- or chemotherapy. A rise in serum Cp and Fe levels might then be expected to occur.

5.3

A comparison between the EL4 tumor and Neisseria meningitidis systems

Further early studies demonstrated that it was difficult to manipulate tumor cell growth in vivo by withholding or supplying additional Fe. Tt was initially believed that it was the late onset of hypoferremia which was important and that if this response could be induced earlier tumor cell growth would be inhibited by Fe deprivation. Elicitation of an early hypoferremia with turpentine, however, had no increased inhibitory effect on tumor cell proliferation. All of the in vivo results in this study were much different from those observed with murine meningococcemia (Holbein et al., 1979; Holbein, 1980; 1981; Beaumier et al., 1984) even though in both systems Fe is obtained by direct binding of Tf. In the neisserial system, hypoferremia was much more severe as serum Tf Fe levels were undetectable at 18-24 h post injection (Holbein, 1980) and hypoferremia could sufficiently deprive cells of Fe to cause inhibition of growth. Furthermore, in vivo growth of N. meningitidis could be enhanced by addition of Fe or inhibited by desferrioxamine or turpentine-induced hypoferremia. \setminus In the bacterial system, the onset of hypoferremia is rapid. This suggests that the inflammatory response is elicited immediately. This could be because of the much faster growth rate of the bacterial cells compared to tumor cells

and the fact that the bacterial antigens are immediately recognized by the host as foreign. Although the time of onset of hypoferremia does not appear to be important as far as inhibiting tumor growth is concerned, its late onset emphasizes the point discussed above that during neoplastic disease the host response does not function as it should.

The results observed in the tumor cell and meningococcal systems suggested that there are important fundamental differences in the response of the two cellular systems to Tf. It appeared as if the tumor cells had a unique ability to obtain sufficient Fe under conditions of extremely low Tf saturation. This was verified by subsequent *in vitro* work. These tumor cells could grow on the relatively minute Fe level provided by 6 ug ml⁻¹ 10% Fe-saturated human Tf. Fe uptake from 50%-saturated Tf was saturated at 150 nM Tf and Fe which is approximately 1/250 of the normal serum Tf concentration. Furthermore, addition of apo-Tf to mimic hypoferremia did not decrease Fe uptake proportionally to the amount of apo-Tf added. It was therefore demonstrated in three ways: by *in vivo* studies and by both growth and uptake studies that the hypoferremic response is not effective in limiting Fe acquisition by tumor cells.

These results are entirely reasonable in light of what is now known about the eucaryotic Tf cycle. Dautry-Varsat *et al.* (1983) and Klausner *et al.* (1983a) demonstrated that there is a difference in the affinity of the Tf receptor for ferri-Tf and apo-Tf at physiological pH. As the Tf receptor has very little affinity for apo-Tf at this pH it offers very little competition to ferri-Tf for receptor binding. Binding studies with EL4-1 cells demonstrated that the K_d (5.9 nM) for Tf binding was 1/6356 of the concentration of Tf in the serum or 1/100,000 of the concentration of

serum proteins (Dautry-Varsat and Lodish; 1984) revealing an extremely high ligand-receptor affinity. For neisserial receptors to be half occupied 7.5 X 10⁻⁸ M diferric Tf was required indicating a somewhat lower receptor affinity. Diferric and apo-Tf appeared to be equally competitive in N. meningitidis binding studies. Based on the results of these studies and those of Simonson et al. (1982) the following hypothesis was suggested to explain the difference) in effectiveness of hypoferremia in the two systems. The hypoferremic response is effective in the case of N. meningitidis and ineffective in the case of tumor cells because of the difference in the ability of the two receptor systems to distinguish between Fe-bearing and Fe-free Tf. This ability is high in the case of tumor cells and lower in the case of N. meningitidis. Therefore when tumor cells are growing in vivo and hypoferremia occurs although there is an increase in the number of molecules of apo-Tf present in the serum or ascites fluid the tumor cell receptors, having relatively little affinity for apo-Tf, preferentially bind ferri-Tf. When N. meningitidis is growing in vivo and hypoferremia occurs the cell receptors, being less discriminating, recognize the protein not the Fe moiety and apo-Tf is bound inhibiting the binding of ferri-Tf.

Fe-sufficient N. meningitidis were found to have 252 Tf binding sites per cell which appears extremely low when compared to the number of binding sites found on EL4-1 (1.1 X 10^5 surface binding sites) and other tumor cells. However, the relative sizes of the two types of cells must be considered as meningococcal cells are much smaller than the eucaryotic tumor cells. If the number of binding sites per um² of cell surface for the two types of cells is compared, Fe-sufficient meningococci have 164 binding sites per um² of surface area and EL4-1 have 126 sites per um² of surface

- **^1**74

area. Therefore N. meningitidis has 30% more binding sites per um². To illustrate this, the binding of Tf molecules on the basis of cellular surface area for the two cell types is compared in Fig. 31. The data for this figure were taken from Figs. 24 and 30. A comparison of these binding data for the meningococcus and EL4-1 cells at 4° C in these particular experiments suggests that N. meningitidis is binding 113% more molecules of Tf per mm² of cell surface area.

5.47 A discussion of the EL4 work and implications for future research

It could be asked whether similar results concerning the hypoferremic response might be expected in other tumor models, for example, in a solid tumor model of neoplastic disease with entirely different growth kinetics. However, in several tumor cell lines studied by others (Dautry-Varsat *et al.*, 1983; Klausner *et al.*, 1983a; Urushizaki *et al.*, 1984) the same principles apply; that is, the Tf receptor has a very high affinity for ferri-Tf and a much lower affinity for apo-Tf. On this basis it could be predicted that similar results would be obtained in other tumor systems.

The fact that tumor cells can utilize other sources of Fe such as hemoglobin and ferritin make it more unlikely that tumor cells growing in vivo would be Fe-deprived. Normally, neither hemoglobin nor appreciable ferritin would be available. During malignant disease, especially in the later stages in which both hemolysis of red blood cells and tissue invasion and destruction occur, these sources of Fe would likely become more available. The mechanism of Fe uptake from these two Fe sources was not investigated in this study. It is not known whether these cells possess recep-

175[.]

Fig. 31 A comparison of the time course of binding of diferric human transferrin to EL4-1 and N. meningitidis cells. Time course binding results were taken from Fig. 24 and Fig. 30 for comparison, N. meningitidis cells at 4° C (\blacksquare), EL4-1 cells at 37° C (\bullet) and at 4° C (\blacktriangle).



Q.

tors for hemoglobin or whether this compound is taken up by non-specific or fluid phase endocytosis. Ferritin, a large molecule, may have to be broken down at the cell surface before Fe uptake occurs. It was recently reported (Fargion *et al.*, 1987) that certain cell lines, including the human erythroleukemic K562 line, possess specific deceptors for the ferritin H subunit. This suggests a mechanism whereby Fe could be obtained from ferritin and it would be interesting to determine whether the murine tumor cells also exhibit ferritin subunit receptors. It is also possible that binding of ferritin to cells may serve a purpose other than Fe transfer.such as some form of immune regulation as serum ferritin is generally Fe-poor.

The present studies and those of others have demonstrated clearly that eucaryotic cells have distinct Tf species preferences for growth. Competition binding studies determined that in most cases growth preferences were directly correlated with the binding affinity of a particular Tf for Tf receptors. In general, cells of a particular species have been found to prefer the homologous Tf. The murine tumor cells used in these studies and several human lines examined by others have little affinity for bovine Tf and higher concentrations are required in media for growth. Cells, are generally cultured in media containing fetal bovine serum at a concentration of 10% which would provide 300 ug ml⁻¹ Tf, a relatively high concentration, which has been shown to be adequate for two human lines (Tsavaler *et al.*, 1986; Penhallow *et al.*, 1986) and would be sufficient for \mathbf{z}

Conalbumin and Lf do not compete for binding to Tf receptor sites.

178.

Specific Lf receptors, distinct from Tf binding sites, have been reported on phytohemagglutinin-stimulated human peripheral blood lymphocytes (Mazurier et al., 1987). It cannot be ruled out that EL4 cells which are lymphoma cells may also possess specific Lf binding sites; alternatively, these sites may have been lost during the transformation process. Determination of specific Lf binding sites on EL4-1' cells could be made by radiolabelling Lf and measuring binding, as was done for Tf, and then by performing competition studies with unlabelled Lf.' It would be interesting to see whether Lf binding sites were present on the EL4-1 cells as well as on mitogen-stimulated murine lymphocytes. If Lf is acting as an Fe source 🖡 it would have to undergo a different intracellular mechanism for Fe release than Tf as Lf does not release Fe at low pH. Lf may be degraded in the lysosomes and the Fe released in this way. It has been suggested in the case of lymphocytes that Lf may possess some function apart from Fe transfer, for example it may have an immuno-regalatory role (Mazurier et al., 1987). It would be interesting to determine whether malignant lymphocytes still possess these receptors as this could be a possible immune mechanism to which malignant lymphocytes are no longer susceptible but which may control proliferation of normal lymphocytes.

The exception to the rule that cells prefer their homologous Tf in these studies was murine Tf which did not bind as readily as human Tf to EL4-1 and to the other murine cells examined. As mentioned in section 4.3.3, the murine Tf used for these studies appeared to be pure and functional. Ideally, the studies should be repeated with another type of murine Tf to verify the observed murine receptor preference for human Tf. On the basis of the present studies it appears that the three-dimensional conformation of human Tf has a better "receptor fit" than murine Tf and in competition studies it binds to a greater degree than mouse Tf. Elucidation of the tertiary structure of both Tf's and of the receptor and determination of the sites where ligand and receptor interact would demonstrate why the murine receptor preferentially binds human Tf.

These and other studies indicate that although the carbohydrate moiety is one portion of the Tf molecule that differs from species to species it is not the variation in carbohydrate that causes differences in Tf binding affinities. As the various species of Tf evolved certain critical residues were conserved such as those involved with Fe binding and those forming (Williams, 1982). The differences in the stabilizing disulfide bridges binding affinities of the various Tf's suggest that there have been amino acid changes in the regions of the molecule involved in binding to the The primary amino acido sequence determines the three dimenreceptor. sional conformation of the molecule and this is what is recognized by the Determination of the receptor binding domain on the Tf molecule receptor. is an important problem in the area of Tf research. The amino acid sequences of human Tf, conalbumin and Lf are now known as is the sequence of the human Tf receptor. The elucidation of the amino acid sequences of other species of Tf and the tertiary structures of the various Tf's would be important steps in answering the question of how ligand and receptor in-This problem has also been approached in studies in which Tf's teract. have been enzymatically cleaved into N and C terminal halves. Monoclonal antibodies have been made to the entire molecule and to the N and Cterminal moieties and binding behaviour in the presence and absence of the

monoclonal antibodies examined. Work by Brown-Mason and Woodworth (1984) using ovoTf (conalbumin) and chick embryo erythrocytes suggests that both N and C terminal domains of the protein are necessary for binding to occur indicating that both domains contain sequences necessary for receptor recognition.

The results in this thesis which indicate the difficulty in manipulating tumor cell growth in vivo by supplying or withholding Fe do not necessarily mean that certain principles of Fe acquisition cannot be used in tumor therapy. Several interesting studies have been performed using monoclonal antibodies to tumor cell Tf receptors. As pointed out by Ward (1987), a serious problem in cancer therapy is directing the therapeutic agent solely to the tumor cells and not to normal tissue and monoclonal antibodies to tumor antigens might be an appropriate means of doing this. For example, Trowbridge and Domingo (1981) demonstrated that monoclonal antibodies to Tf réceptors could be coupled to ricin or diphtheria toxins and these conjugates were toxic to tumor cells in vitro. It was also found that the monoclonal antibodies alone and the ricin-antibody conjugates inhibited the growth of melanoma cells in nude mice. In another study (Trowbridge et al., 1984), i.v. or i.p. injection of the Tf receptor monoclonal antibody R17 208 had a significant effect on in vivo growth of SL-2 murine T-cell leukemia cells. Mice treated with the monoclonal antibody demonstrated enhanced survival and inhibition of the primary tumor at the inoculation site. It has, however, been pointed out that other cells including erythroid cells also have Tf receptors and would be susceptible to these antibodies or antibody-conjugates perhaps resulting in

anemia. Ward (1987) suggested that such anemia might be relatively easy to treat and this form of therapy might involve less toxicity than other forms of anti-neoplastic therapy.

The results presented in section 4.1.3 suggested that initially desferrioxamine injections had an inhibitory effect on EL4/tumor cell Lederman et al. (1984) demonstrated that proliferation in vivo. when lymphocytes are exposed to desferrioxamine in vitro this Fe chelator affects cellular DNA synthesis, it decreases intracellular pools of , deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates and blocks cells in early S phase. As the enzyme ribonucleotide reductase requires Fe as a co-factor, these inhibitory effects can be directly attributed to Fe deprivation. This suggests possible applications for use of this drug in, neoplastic therapy. Perhaps if continuous infusions of this drug were given, as for Fe overload therapy, tumor cell proliferation could be inhibited by Fe deprivation or tumor cells could be synchronized in early S phase and then other cytotoxia drugs which act on S phase cells could be given to kill this fraction of tumor cells.

During the past several years, much information has been gained concerning eucaryotic cellular Fe acquisition and the endocytic Tf cycle. Several interesting and challenging questions, however, remain to be answered. The problem of elucidating the relative sites of ligand and receptor interaction has already been discussed. Also, it is still not known what triggers Tf-Tf receptor internalization. Binding of ligand appears not to be the trigger as evidence suggests that receptors are internalized in the absence of bound ligand (Watts, 1985). Receptor phosphorylation had been suggested as a possible signal for internalization but

• more recent evidence suggests that this is not the case (Rothenberger et al., 1987). It is known that the cytoplasmic domain is required for Tf internalization; perhaps conformational changes in this region of the receptor may be involved. Alternatively there may be intracellular signals or binding factors which and on this domain which cause internalization. Further deletion mutagenesis studies should pin-point the actual part of the cytoplasmic domain needed for internalization. If phosphorylation is not an internalization signal, what is its role, if any, in endocytosis and does its role vary with cellular type or between transformed and nontransformed cells? It has been suggested that Tf-receptor interaction may have a role other than Fe acquisition such as a role in cellular growth regulation (May and Cuatrecasas, 1985). Phosphorylation of the Tf receptor may provide an intracellular signal which is important in this regard. Whatever the role of receptor phosphorylation it is an interesting question to be answered.

Several questions need to be resolved concerning what becomes of Fe intracellularly once it has been released from Tf. Does Fe initially become part of a labile pool; is it bound to a low molecular weight carrier (Jacobs, 1977)? What is the nature of this carrier and is it involved in intracellular Fe transport for example in transporting Fe to the mitochondria for heme synthesis?

Finally, an interesting problem is how different ligands and receptors are sorted intracellularly; what directs certain ligands and /or receptors to the lysosomes to be degraded while Tf and its receptor are kept within distinct vesicles and recycled to the cell surface? The fate of ligands and receptors seems to depend on the role of the ligand. Some provide in-

formation or signals to the cell and these are generally degraded. Other ligands such as Tf provide a necessary nutrient (although as suggested above Tf may have a dual role) and it is certainly an advantage to an organism to have both the receptor and ligand recycled. Information obtained concerning intracellular sorting will not only further elucidate the Tf cycle but will also yield important information about cellular growth and physiology in general.

5.5 A discussion of Neisseria meningitidis work and implications for v future research

The findings in this thesis confirmed previous findings of others that Neisseria meningitidis can utilize Tf and Lf Fe but not conalbumin Fe. It was also observed that this organism had a preference for human over bovine Tf. These studies also confirmed that N. meningitidis directly binds Tf (Archibald and DeVoe, 1979; Simonson *et al*, 1982) as it possesses surface binding sites. This distinguishes the pathogenic from the commensal neisseriae as N. subflava cannot utilize Tf Fe as it does not possess receptor binding sites. This indicates that possession of these binding sites and the ability to remove Fe from Tf is an important characteristic of virulence. It was also found that E. coli, a siderophore-producing bacterium, does not have Tf binding sites.

When one considers bacterial mechanisms of Fe acquisition in vivo, it is interesting that the majority of bacteria have evolved siderophores while a minority, such as N. meningitidis, Haemophilus influenzae, and Bordetella pertussis (Redhead et al., 1987) have not. This difference can

probably be related to the environment in which the organisms are found. Bacteria such as E. coli and Salmonella are enteric bacteria and are found in the vertebrate intestine where under certain circumstances they may They are also hardy organisms and can survive in soil. cause disease. sewage and other environments for some time. The ability to synthesize siderophores would enable the organism to obtain Fe in vivo or in these ex-N. meningitidis, Haemophilus and Bordetella are ternal environments. neither ubiquitous nor resistant organisms and cannot live for long outside the human host and therefore are evolved to obtain Fe in vivo only. To be able to obtain Fe by binding Tf directly is a definite advantage for a pathogen over the production of siderophores. Siderophores must be released, bind Fe and return it to the cell. This mechanism of Fe acquisition may not be as secure as direct Tf binding as siderophores are diluted - by secretion into the blood and obtaining Fe will be directly dependent on the concentration of siderophore attained.

The fact that Neisseria and Bordetella can utilize Lf Fe presumably because this protein also binds to surface binding sites would provide these pathogens with a another advantage. Lf is found in the mucosal secretions of the naso- and oro-pharynx where these pathogens would initially gain entrance to the body. The function of Lf in this location is to bind Fe and withhold it from invading pathogens. Those bacteria which are able to bind and deferrate this protein would not be inhibited and would be at an advantage in the initial stage of infection. The binding of human Tf or Lf to the bacterial cell might also serve to mask or cover up bacterial surface antigens and reduce the host immune response.

The studies of Redhead et al. (1987) demonstrated that Bordetella per-

tussis could utilize Tf, Lf and conalbumin for growth. Competitive binding studies suggested that all three proteins bound to the same receptor site. In this respect Bordetella differs from N. meningitidis as the latter organism cannot utilize conalbumin Fe for growth and the present results and those of Mickelsen et al. (1982) with N. gonorrhoeae suggest that utilization of Lf Fe involves binding sites distinct from the Tf binding sites. Competition binding studies with N. meningitidis indicated that the Tf binding sites do not have the same degree of specificity that the eucaryotic sites have as conalbumin and Lf interfered with Tf binding to a certain extent.

There are numerous intriguing questions which remain to be answered concerning the mechanism whereby N. meningitidis removes Fe from Tf. It is interesting that this pathogen can bind Tf when Fe-sufficient but that more binding sites are induced under conditions of Fe deprivation; furthermore, this bacterium reportedly cannot remove Fe from Tf unless it is Fe-deprived (Simonson *et al.*, 1982). Therefore at least two Fe-acquisition components are induced by Fe deprivation: additional Tf binding sites and an Feremoval mechanism. It is not known what is induced in the cell by Fedeprivation that enables the cell to remove Fe from Tf. It is not known whether an outer membrane protein apart from the Tf binding site is inwhich is involved in Fe removal or whether periplasmic binding duced. proteins or cytoplasmic membrane components are involved as well.® It remains to be determined how the pathogen removes Fe from Tf after binding; perhaps the newly-induced surface component has an affinity for Fe similar to Tf and can remove Fe from this protein or alternatively, a reductive mechanism may be involved. It is not known how Fe acts intracellularly to

cause derepression of this Fe-removal function; perhaps Fe acts as a corepressor with a regulatory protein to repress this mode of Fe acquisition under Fe-sufficient conditions in a manner analogous to that which occurs during siderophore synthesis (section 2.9.1).

Neisseria gonorrhoeae can also utilize Tf Fe for growth presumably also by directly binding Tf. This could easily be verified by performing binding studies with radiolabelled Tf. It would be interesting to enumerate cellular Tf binding sites and compare this to the number found on N. meningitidis.

Herrington and Sparling (1985) found that the human pathogen Haemophilus influenzae could also utilize Tf Fe but that the non-pathogenic H. parainfluenzae could not, a situation similar to the neisseriae. It could be determined whether this also holds true for other pathogenic and non-pathogenic haemophili. These studies could then be carried further, as was done with N. meningitidis, by performing binding studies and enumerating Tf binding sites.

The neisserial Tf binding site has never been isolated or characterized and this is an important area which needs to be explored. To approach this problem, initially outer membrane fractions of Fe-deprived and Fe-sufficient *N. meningitidis* and a non-pathogenic neisseria should be prepared and run on SDS-PAGE to determine which Fe-repressible proteins are present. These proteins could be transferred to nitrocellulose paper by immunoblotting, probed with ¹²⁵I-Tf and subjected to autoradiography. This procedure might localize the Tf binding protein. Fe-deprived cells, which have more binding sites, could be incubated with radiolabelled Tf and a cross-linking reagent could be used to bind ligand to receptor. The use of a cross-linking reagent would prevent SDS-mediated dissociation of the Tf and its receptor. Subsequently, the outer membrane fraction could be isolated and run on SDS-PAGE followed by autoradiography. From this an estimate of the receptor molecular weight could be obtained. By running this same material on two-dimensional electrophoresis the components might be further resolved and characterized. Similar studies could be performed with Bordetella and Haemophilus. Affinity chromatography using Tf coupled to Sepharose might also be useful in isolating the Tf binding site from radiolabelled bacterial outer membrane fractions.

The genetics of bacterial acquisition of Fe from Tf is another important area to be explored. In order to do this, the N. meningitidis culture would have to be mutagenized and mutants incapable of utilizing or binding Using the meningococcal wild type strain, chromosomal DNA Tf isolated. could be digested by restriction enzymes, a library of fragments isolated and inserted into suitable E. coli compatible cosmids. These could subsequently be inserted into E., coli or non-pathogenic neisserial hosts and expression of the genes of interest screened for by growth on Tf in vitro. Another approach would be to subject N. meningitidis chromosomal DNA to restriction enzyme digestion and insert the fragments into a bi-directional shuttle vector, such as the pLES2 vector described by Stein et al. (1983), which can function in both E. coli and N. gonorrhoeae. The resulting plasmids could then be inserted into an E. coli mutant defective in high affinity Fe acquisition systems (i.e. defective in enterochelin biosynthesis and lacking the ColV plasmid carrying the aerobactin genes). The presence functioning Tf Fe acquisition genes could be screened for by determinof

.

ing whether the bacteria could grow in Fe-deficient media with Tf as the sole Fe source. (The media must also be deficient in citrate and any The presence of novel Fe-repressible other siderophore-like compounds.) membrane proteins could be ascertained using SDS-PAGE. Binding of labelled Tf to the cells followed by treatment with a cross-linking reagent could determine which protein is able to bind Tf. Deletion analysis could further map the areas of the fragments required for Tf binding and Fe uptake. Subsequent work including in vitro transcription, S1 nuclease mapping and DNA and RNA sequence analysis could be useful for promoter mapping. Use of the S1 nuclease mapping assay could be used to measure the specific RNA levels under conditions of Fe-sufficiency and Fe limitation to investigate transcriptional regulation by Fe. Regulation could also be studied by constructing a protein fusion of the putative promoter region and a promoterless lacZ gene. Beta-galactosidase activity could then be measured under Fe-deficient and Fe-replete conditions.

The use of *E. coli* for this aspect of the work may be appropriate as both the genome and Fe regulation are well-characterized in this organism . and mutants defective in high affinity Fe uptake are available. Once Tf Fe acquisition has been characterized in the *E. coli* system, the vector plasmid could be inserted into an *N. meningitidis* mutant defective in Tf Fe utilization to determine whether the genes are still functional in *Neisseria*. This may necessitate insertion of neisserial chromosomal sequences (uptake sequences) into the plasmid in order that the DNA will be taken up by the *Neisseria* (Stein *et al.*, 1983).

It may be difficult, however, to insert the neisserial chromosomal fragments into the vector and secondly, the genes of interest may not be

expressed in the E. coli mutant. Alternatively, the gene(s) for the Tf binding protein might be expressed and those for Fe removal from Tf not expressed. Binding in the absence of Fe removal could be studied through the use of fluorescent antibody studies, covalent cross-linkers or radiolabelled Tf binding studies. Preliminary work must, however, be done to determine the feasibility of this approach.

As discussed in section 2.2, Black *et al.* (1986) have isolated a mutant which does not produce a 70,000 dalton Fe-repressible outer membrane protein and cannot grow on Tf or Lf or remove 55 Fe from these proteins. It is not known whether this Fe-repressible protein is the Tf binding site or if another protein is involved in Fe removal from Tf and Lf. Further work has been done in laboratory of P. F. Sparling on this aspect of Fe acquisition. The 70,000 dalton protein has been isolated but, as mentioned in section 2.2, the *N. meningitidis* mutant does not appear to be transformation competent and the genetic analysis has not proceeded (D. Dyer, personal communication). The present results indicate that Tf and Lf have separate binding sites, however, another inducible protein such as the 70,000 dalton protein might be involved in Fe removal from both proteins.

The future possibilities for this work are potentially quite important. As has been pointed out by both Black *et al.* (1986) and Redhead *et al.* (1987) these outer membrane Fe-acquisition proteins might prove to be useful in the development of vaccines. It has been extremely difficult in the past to produce an effective vaccine for group B meningococci and if the organism's Fe-binding proteins could be isolated and purified they may be suitable proteins for use as immunizing agents. Many questions remain to be answered concerning how organisms such as the pathogens *Neisseria*, Bordetella and Haemophilus obtain Fe from Tf in vivo. These many questions, however, provide scope for exciting future research.

5.6 Summary and conclusions

This study was begun to examine the effect of the hypoferremic response on tumor cell Fe acquisition using a lymphoma of C57 black mice as a model. Although a marked hypoferremic response was elicited in the host during tumor cell growth the response occurred late in the disease and did not appear to benefit the host. Attempts to manipulate tumor cell growth in vivo by providing more Fe or withholding Fe were unsuccessful, suggesting that these tumor cells were capable of obtaining sufficient Fe under adverse strongly hypoferremic conditions. Subsequent in vitro growth and uptake studies revealed that the lymphoma cells could obtain Fe from Tf when the Fe saturation was lower than would occur in vivo during hypoferremia.

Fe acquisition by the lymphoma cells was further examined in terms of Fe requirements for growth, Tf preferences for growth and types of Fe utilized by the cells. Cellular Tf binding to the cells was studied to enumerate if binding sites and examine Tf-Tf receptor specificity. Binding of Tf to Neisseria meningitidis was also examined to determine why the hypoferremic response is effective in inhibiting Fe acquisition and growth in the neisserial system but not in the tumor cell system. Taken together, the present results and those of Simonson *et al.* (1982) strongly suggest

the following hypothesis to be true. Hypoferremia is not effective in the tumor cell system as the more sophisticated eucaryotic Tf receptors can discriminate between ferri- and apo-Tf as they have high affinity for the former and low affinity for the latter at neutral pH thus the presence of apo-Tf does not interfere with binding. In contrast, the neisserial receptor cannot as readily discern between Fe-bearing and Fe-free Tf and apo-Tf is bound by the receptor inhibiting the binding of Fe-containing Tf thus causing inhibition of growth by Fe deprivation.

- 191

REFERENCES

Aasa, Roland, Bo. G. Malstrom, Paul Saltman and Tore Vanngard. 1963. The specific binding of iron (III) and copper (II) to transferrin and conalbumin. Biochim. Biophys. Acta. 75: 203-222.

Aisen, P. 1980. The transferrins. In: <u>Iron in Biochemistry and Medicine</u>, <u>II</u> pp 87-129. Jacobs, A and M. Worwood, editors. Academic Press, New York.

Aisen, Philip and Adela Leibman. 1972. Lactoferrin and transferrin: A comparative study. Biochim. Biophys Acta 257: 314-323.

Aisen, Philip and Irving Listowsky. 1980. Iron transport and storage proteins. Ann. Rev. Biochem. 49: 357-393.

Alcantara, O., J. L. Phillips and D. H. Boldt. 1986. Phorbol diesters and transferrin modulate lymphoblastoid cell transferrin receptor expression by two different mechanisms. J. Cell. Physiol. 129: 329-335.

Archibald, Fred S. and I. W. DeVoe. 1978. Iron in Neisseria meningitidis: Minimum requirements, effects of limitation, and characteristics of uptake. J. Bacteriol. 136: 35-48. Archibald, Fred S. and I. W. DeVoe. 1979. Removal of iron from human transferrin by *Neisseria meningiditis*. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. 6: 159-162.

Archibald, Fred S. and I. W. DeVoe. 1980. Iron acquisition by Neisseria meningitidis in vitro. Infect. Immun. 27: 322-334.

Arosio, Paolo, Thomas G. Adelman and James W. Drysdale. 1978. On ferritin heterogeneity. Further evidence for heteropolymers. J. Biol. Chem. 253: 4451-4458.

Baines, M. G., F. L. LaFleur and B. E. Holbein. 1983. Involvement of transferrin and transferrin receptors in human natural killer effector:target interaction. Immunol. Lett. 7: 51-55.

Barnes, David and Gordon Sato. 1980. Serum-free cell culture: a unifying approach. Cell 22: 649-655.

Bartek, Jiri, Vladimir Viklicky and Antonin Stratil. 1985. Phylogenetically more conservative epitopes among monoclonal antibodydefined antigenic sites of human transferrin are involved in recep
tor binding. Br. J. Haematol. 59: 435-441.

Basset, P., J. Zwiller, M. O. Revel and G. Vincendon. 1985. Growth promotion of transformed cells by iron in serum-free culture: Carcinogenesis 6: 355-359.

q,,⊰

Beamish, M. R., P. Ashley Jones, D. Trevett, I. Howell Evans and A. Jacobs. 1972. Iron metabolism in Hodgkin's disease. Br. J. Cancer 26: 444-452.

Beaumier, Danielle L., Margaret A. Caldwell and Bruce E. Holbein. 1984. Inflammation triggers hypoferremia and de novo synthesis of serum transferrin and ceruloplasmin in mice. Infect. Immun. 46: 489-494.

Beeson, Paul B. 1948. Temperature-elevating effect of a substance obtained from polymorphonuclear leukocytes. J. lin. Invest. (Abstr.) 27:524.

Bezkorovainy, Anatoly. 1980. <u>Biochemistry of Non-Heme Iron</u>. Plenum Press. New York.

Black, John R., David W. Dyer, Martin K. Thompson and P. Frederick Sparling. 1986. Human immune response to iron-repressible outer membrane proteins of Neisseria meningitidis. Infect. Immun. 54: 710-713.

Blanc, Bernard and Henri Isliker. 1961. Isolement et caracterisation de la proteine rouge siderophile du lait maternel: la lactotransferrine. Bull. Soc. Chem. Biol. 43: 929-943.

Bomford, Adrian and Roger Williams. 1976. Long term results of venesection therapy in idiopathic haemochromatosis. Quart. J. Med. NS 45: 611-623.

195

Bomford, Adrian, Jane Isaac, Stephanie Roberts, Andrew Edwards, Stephen Young and Roger Williams. 1986. The effect of desferrioxamine on transferrin receptors, the cell cycle and growth rates of human leukaemic cells. Biochem J. 236: 243-249.

Bornstein, Donald L. 1982. Leukocytic pyrogen: a major mediator of the acute phase reaction. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 389: 323-337.

Ð

Bost, Kenneth L., Eric M. Smith and J. Edwin Blalock. 1985. Regions of complementarity between the messenger RNAs for epidermal growth factor, transferrin, interleukin-2 and their respective receptors. Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 128: 1373-1380.

Bothwell, T. H., H. Seftel, P. Jacobs, J. D. Torrance and N. Baumslag. 1964. Iron overload in Bantu subjects. Studies on the availability of iron in Bantu beer. Am. J. Clin. Nutr. 14: 47-51.

Bottomley, Sylvia S., Lawrence C. Wolfe and Kenneth R. Bridges. 1985. Iron metabolism in K562 erythroleukemic cells. J. Biol. Chem. 260: 6811-6815.

Braun, Volkmar. 1981. Escherichia coli cells containing the plasmid Colv -

produce the iron ionophore aerobactin. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. 11: 225-228.

- Brawn, Karen and Irwin Eridovich. 1980. Superoxide fadical and superoxide dismutases: threat and defense. Acta Physiol. Scand. Suppl. 492: 9-18.
- Brener, Ď., I. W. DeVoe and B. E. Holbein. 1981. Increased virulence of Neisseria meningitidis after in vitro iron-limited growth at low pH. Infect. Immun. 33: 59-66.
- Brock, J. H. 1980. Lactoferrin in human milk: its role in iron absorption and protection against enteric infection in the newborn infant. Arch. Dis. Child. 55: 417-421.
- Brock, J. H. 1981. The effect of iron and transferrin on the response of serum-free cultures of mouse lymphocytes to concanavalin A and lipopolysaccharide. Immunology 43: 387-392.

Brown-Mason, Anne and Robert C. Woodworth. 1984. Physiological levels of binding and iron donation by complementary half-molecules of ovotransferrin to transferrin receptors of chick reticulocytes. - J. Biol. Chem. 259: 1866-1873.

Bryce, C. F. A. and R. R. Crichton. 1971. The subunit structure of horse spleen apoferritin I. The molecular weight of the subunit. J.

Biol. Chem. 246: 4198-4205.

Bullen, J. J., C. L. Leigh and Henry J. Rogers. 1968. The effect of iron compounds on the virulence of *Escherichia coli* for guinea-pigs. Immunology 15: 581-588.

Bullen, J. J., Henry J. Rogers and L. Leigh. 1972. Iron-binding proteins in milk and resistance to *Escherichia coli* infection in infants. Br. Med. J. 1:69-75.

Bullen, J. J., C. G. Ward and S. N. Wallis. 1974. Virulence and the role of iron in *Pseudomonas aereuginosa* infection. Infect. Immun. 10: 443-450,

Bullen, J. J., Henry J. Rogers and E. Griffiths. 1978. Role of iron in bacterial infection. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. 80: 1-35.

Capel, Ifor D. and Andrew C. Thornley. 1982. Superoxide dismutase activity, caeruloplasmin activity and lipoperoxide levels in tumour and host tissues of mice bearing the Lewis lung carcinoma. Eur. J. Cancer Clin. Oncol. 18: 507-513.

Caroline, Leona, Fred Rosner and Philip J, Kozinn. 1969. Elevated serum iron, low unbound transferrin and candidiasis in acute leukemia. Blood 34: 441-451. Cartwright, G. E., M. A. Lauristen, S. Humphreys, P. J. Jones, I. M. Merril, and M. M. Wintrobe. 1946. The anemia of infection II. The experimental production of hypoferremia and anemia in dogs. J. Clin. Invest. 25: 81-86.

Cartwright, G. E. and G. R. Lee. 1971. The anaemia of chronid disorders. Br. J. Haematol. 21: 147-152.

Chamness, Gary C. and William L. McGuire. 1975. Scatchard plots: common errors in correction and interpretation. Steroids 26: 538-542.

Chandler, Francis W. Jr., and Oscar J. Fletcher Jr. 1973. Radioiron incorporation by a transplantable lymphoid tumor. Cancer Res. 33 342-350.

Chasteen, N. D. 1987. Structure and function of the transferrins. Eighth International Conference on Proteins of Iron Transport and Storage. May 10-14, 1987. Montebello, Quebec. Canada.

Ciechanover, Aaron, Alan L. Schwartz, Alice Dautry-Varsat and Harvey F. Lodish. 1983. Kinetics of internalization and recycling of transferrin and the transferrin receptor in a human hepatoma cell line. J. Biol. Chem. 258: 9681-9689.

Ciechanover, Aaron, Alan L. Schwartz and Harvey F. Lodish. 1983a. The asialoglycoprotein receptor internalizes and recycles

independently of the transferrin and insulin receptors.

Cell 32: 267-275

Conrad, M. E. and J. C. Barton. 1981. Factors affecting iron balance. Am. J. Hematol. 10: 199-225.

Crichton, Robert R. 1984. Iron uptake and utilization by mamma ian cells II. Intracellular iron utilization. Trends in Biochem. Sci. 9: 283-286.-

Grichton, R. R. and C. F. A. Bryce. 1970. Molecular weight estimation of epoferritin sub units. FEBS Lett. 6: 121-124.

Dautry-Varsat, Alice, Aaron Ciechanover and Harvey F. Lodish. 1983. pH and the recycling of transferrin during receptor-mediated endocytosis. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A. 80: 2258-2262.

Dautry-Varsat, Alice and Harvey F. Lodish. 1984. How receptors bring proteins and particles into cells. Sci. Amer. 250: 52-58.

Davis, Roger J., Gary L. Johnson, Daniel J. Kelleher, Jacqueline K.

Anderson, John E. Mole and Michael P. Czech. 1986. Identification of serine 24 as the unique site on the transferrin receptor phosphorylated by protein kinase C. J. Biol. Chem. 261: 9034-9041.

De Abrew,-Sunil. 1981. Assays for transferrin and transferrin receptors
in tumour and other mouse tissues. Int. J. Nuc. Med. Biol. 8: 217-221.

Delaney, T.A., W: H. Morgan and E. H. Morgan. 1982. Chemical, but not functional, differences between the iron-binding sites of rabbit transferrin. Biochim. Biophys. Acta 701: 295-304.

De Sousa, M., A. Smithyman, and C. Tan. 1978. Suggested models of ecotaxopathy in lymphoreticular malignancy. Am. J. Pathol. 90: 497-520.

Dinarello, Charles. A. 1981. Demonstration of a human pyrogen-inducing factor during mixed leukocyte reactions. J. Exp. Med. 153: 1215-1224.

Dinarello, Charles A. and Sheldon M. Wolff. 1978. Pathogenesis of fever in man. N. Engl. J. Med. 298: 607-612.

Drysdale; James W. 1977. Ferritin phenotypes: Structure and metabolism. In: CIBA Found. Symp. NS 51: <u>Iron Metabolism</u> pp 41-67. Elsevier North-Holland, Amsterdam.

Drysdale, James W. and Hamish N. Munro. 1966. Regulation of synthesis and turnover of ferritin in rat liver. J. Biol. Chem. 241: 3630-3637.

Dubois, Michel, K. A. Gilles, J. K. Hamilton, P. A. Rebers and Fred

Smith. 1956. Colorimetric method for determination of sugars and related substances. Anal. Chem. 28: 350-356.

Dumont, Allan E., Richard J. Ford and Frederick F. Becker. 1976. Siderosis of lymph nodes in patients with Hodgkin's disease. Cancer 38: 1247-1252.

Ecarot-Charrier, B., V. Grey, A. Wilczynska and H. M. Schulman. 1977. The isolation of transferrin receptors from reticulocyte membranes. In: <u>Proteins of Iron Metabolism</u>. pp 291-298. Brown, Elmer B., editor. Grune and Stratton Inc.

Ecarot-Charrier, B., V. L. Grey, A. Wilczynska and H. M. Schulman. 1980. Reticulocyte membrane transferrin receptors. Can. J. Biochem. 58: 418-426.

Enns, Caroline A., Heli A. Suomalainen, Janice E. Gebhardt, Jim Schroder and Howard H. Sussman. 1982. Human transferrin receptor: Expression of the receptor is assigned to chromosome 3. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A. 79: 3241-3245.

Fatgion⁵, S., P. Arosio, A. L. Fracanzani, V. Cislaghi, S. Levi, A. Cozzi, A. Piperno and G. Fiorelli. 1987. Identification of a ferritin receptor specific for H-chain in K562 cells. Eighth International Conference on Proteins of Iron Transport and Storage. (poster) May 10-14, 1987. Montebello, Quebec. Canada. Faulk, W. Page, Bae-Li Hsi and P.J. Stevens. 1980. Transferrin and transferrin receptors in carcinoma of the breast. Lancet ii: 390-392.

Fernandez-Pol. J. A. 1977. Iron: possible cause of the G₁ arrest induced in NRK cells by picolinic acid. Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 78: 136-143.

Fillet, Georges, James D. Cook and Clement A. Finch. 1974. Storage iron kinetics VII. A biologic model for reticuloendothelial iron transport. J. Clin. Anvest. 53: 1527-1533.

Finch, Clement A. and Helmut A. Huebers. 1986. Iron metabolism. Clin. Physiol. Biochem. 4: 5-10.

Finkelstein, Richard A., Carmen V. Sciortino and Mark A. McIntosh. 1983. Role of iron in microbe-host interactions. Revs. Infect. Dis. 5: Supplement 4 \$759-\$777.

Fletcher, J. 1971. The effect of iron and transferrin on the killing of Escherichia coli in fresh serum. Immunology 20: 493-500.

Fletcher, J. and E. R. Huehns. 1968. Function of transferrin. Nature (London) 218: 1211-1214.

Frieden, Earl. 1980. Caeruloplasmin: a multi-functional metalloprotein of vertebrate plasma. CIBA Foundation Symp. 79: 93-113. Frieden, Earl. 1983. The copper connection. Semin. Hematol. 20: 114-117.

Frieden, Earl. 1986. Perspectives on copper biochemistry. Clim. Physiol. Biochem 4: 11-19.

Galloway, Cynthia J., Gary E. Dean, Mark Marsh, Gary Rudnick and Ira Mellman. 1983. Acidification of macrophage and fibroblast endocytic vesicles in vitro. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A. 80: 3334-3338.

Gatter, Kevin C., Geoffrey Brown, Ian S. Trowbridge, Rita-Elizabeth Woolston and David Y. Mason. 1983. Transferrin receptors in human tissues: their distribution and possible clinical relevance. J. Clin. Pathol. 36: 539-545.

Gotschlich, Emil C. 1980. The Neisseriae. In: <u>Microbiology</u>. Davis, Bernard, Renato Dulbecco, Herman N. Eisen and Harold S. Ginsberg, editors. Third edition. Harper and Row Publishers. New York.

Greene, Frank C. and Robert E. Feeney. 1968. Physical evidence for the transferrins as single polypeptide chains. Biochamistry 7: 1366-1371.

Griffiths, Elwyn and Janice Humphreys. 1980. Isolation of enterochelin from the peritoneal washings of guinea pigs lethally infected with *Escherichia coli*. Infect. Immun. 28: 286-289. Griffiths, Elwyn, Pauline Stevenson and Penny Joyce. 1983. Pathogenic Escherichia coli express new outer membrane proteins when growing in vivo. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. 16: 95-99.

Hamilton, Thomas A., H. Garrett Wada and Howard H. Sussman. 1979. Identification of transferrin receptors on the surface of human cultured cells. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A. 76: 6406-6410.

Harding, Clifford, John Heuser and Philip Stahl. 1983. Receptor-mediated endocytosis of transferrin and recycling of the transferrin receptor in rat reticulocytes. J. Cell Biol. 97: 329-339.

Harrison, Pauline M. 1977. Ferritin: An iron-storage molecule. Semin. Hematol. 14: 55-70.

Hatton, M. W. C., E. Regoeczi and K.-L. Wong. 1974. Studies of the metabolism of asialotransferrins: Relationship between the carbohydrate composition of bovine, canine, and porcine asialotransferrins and their metabolic behavior in the rabbit. Can. J. Biochem. 52: 845-853.

Hayashi, I., J. Larner and G. Sato. 1978. Hormonal growth control of cells in culture. In Vitro 14: 23-30.

Hemmaplardh, Deeporn and E. H. Morgan. 1976. Transferrin uptake and release by reticulocytes treated with proteolytic enzymes and

peuraminidase. Biochim. Biophys. Acta 426: 385-398.

Hemmaplardh, Deeporn and E. H. Morgan. 1977. The role of endocytosis in transferrin uptake by reticulocytes and bone marrow cells. Br. J. Haematol. 36 :85-96.

Herrington, Deirdre A. and P. Frederick Sparling. 1985. Haemophilus influenzae can use human transferrin as a sole source for required iron. Infect. Immun. 48: 248-251.

Hershko, Chaim, James D. Cook and Gement A. Finch. 1974. Storage iron kinetics VI. The effect of inflammation on iron exchange in the rat. Br. J. Haematol. 28: 67-75.

Hershko, Chaim and Eliezer A. Rachmilewitz. 1978. Iron chelation in thalassemia: Mechanism of desferrioxamine action, Israel J. Med. Sci. 14: 1111-1115.

Higuchi, Kiyoshi. 1970. An improved chemically defined culture medium for strain L mouse cells based on growth responses to graded levels of nutrients including iron and zinc ions. J. Cell Physiol. 75: 65-72.

Hoffbrand, A. V. 1980. Transfusion siderosis and chelation therapy. In: <u>Iron in Biochemistry and Medicine. II.</u> pp 499-527. Jacobs, A. and M. Worwood, editors. Academic Press, New York.

ø

Holbein, Bruce E., Klaus W. F. Jericho and Garth C. Likes: 1979. Neisseria meningitidis infection in mice: Influence of iron, variations in virulence among strains, and pathology. Infect. Immun. 24: 545-551.

206

Holbein, Bruce E. 1980. Iron-controlled infection with Neisseria meningitidis in mice. Infect. Immun. 29: 886-891.

Holbein, Bruce E. 1981. Enhancement of Neisseria meningitidis infection in mice by addition of iron bound to transferrin. Infect. Immun. 34: 120-125.

Holmberg, Carl G. and C.-B. Laurell. 1947. Investigations in serum cop-.
per. I. Nature of serum copper and its relation to the ironbinding protein in human serum. Acta. Chem. Scand, 1: 944-950.

Hopkins, Colin R. and Ian S., Trowbridge. 1983. Internalization and processing of transferrin and the transferrin receptor in human carcinoma A431 cells. J. Cell Biol. 97: 508-521.

Hunter, Robert L., Beth Bennett, Michael Towns and William R. Vogler. 1984. Transferrin in disease II: Defects in the regulation of transferrin saturation with iron contribute to susceptibility to infection. Am. J. Clin. Pathol. 81: 748-753.

Iacopetta, Barry J. and Evan H. Morgan. 1983. The kinetics of transferrin

endocytosis and iron uptake from transferrin in rabbit reticulocytes. J. Biol. Chem. 258: 9108-9115.

Ackson, S. and T. W. Burrows. 1956. The virulence-enhancing effect of iron on non-pigmented mutants of virulent strains of *Pasteurella* pestis. Br. J. Exp. Pathol. 37: 577-583.

L

Jacobs, A. 1977. Low molecular weight intracellular iron transport compounds. Blood 50: 433-439.

Jacobs, A., A. Slater, J. A. Whittaker, G. Canellos and P. H. Wiernik. 1976. Serum ferritin concentrations in untreated Hodgkin's disease. Br. J. Cancer. 34: 162-166.

· . 1

Jacobs, A., B. Jones, C. Ricketts, R. D. Bulbrook and D. Y. Wang. 1976a. Serum ferritin concentration in early breast cancer. Br. J. Cancer 34: 286-290.

Jandl, James H., John K. Inman, Richard L. Simmons and David W. Allen. 1959. Transfer of Iron from serum iron-binding protein to human reticulocytes. J. Clin. Invest. 38: 161,185.

Johansson, Bengt G. 1958. Chromatographic separation of lactalbumin from human milk whey on calcium phosphate columns. Nature (London) 181: 996-997.

207

Jones, P. A. E., F. M. Miller, M. Worwood and A. Jacobs. 1973. Ferritinaemia in leukaemia and Hodgkin's disease. Br. J. Cancer 27: 212-217.

Kampschmidt, Ralph F. 1978. Leukocytic endogenous mediator. J. Retic. Soc. 23: 287-297.

Kampschmidt, Ralph F. and Herbert F. Upchurch. 1962. Effects of bacteria endotoxin on plasma iron. Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med. 110: 191-193.

Kampschmidt, Ralph F., Herbert F. Upchurch and Herman L. Johnson. 1965. Iron transport after injection of endotoxin in rats. Am. J. Physiol. 208: 68-72.

Kampschmidt, Ralph F. and Herbert Upchurch. 1969. Lowering of plasma iron concentration in the rat with leucocytic extracts. Am. J. Physiol. 216: 1287-1291.

Kaplan, Jerry. 1981. Polypeptide-binding membrane receptors: Analysis and classification. Science 212: 14-20.

Karin, Michael and Beatrice Mintz. 1981. Receptor-mediated endocytosis of transferrin in developmentally totipotent mouse teratocarcinoma stem cells. J. Biol. Chem. 256: 3245-3252.

Klausner, Richard D., Jos Van Renswoude, Gilbert Ashwell, Christoph

Kempf, Alan N. Schechter, Ann Dean and Kenneth R. Bridges. 1983. Receptor-mediated endocytosis of transferrin in K562 cells. J. Biol. Chem. 258: 4715-4724.

Klausner, Richard D., Gilbert Ashwell, Jos Van Renswoude, Joe B. Harford and Kenneth R. Bridges. 1983a. Binding of apotransferrin to K562 cells: Explanation of the transferrin cycle. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80: 2263-2266.

Klausner, Richard D., Joe Harford and Jos Van Renswoude. 1984. Rapid internalization of the transferrin receptor in K562 cells is triggered by ligand binding or treatment with a phorbol ester. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 81: 3005-3009.

Koch, Norbert and Gunter J. Hammerling. 1986. The HLA-D-associated invariant chain binds palmitic acid at the cysteine adjacent to the membrane segment. J. Biol. Chem. 261: 3434-3440.

Kochan, Ivan. 1973. The role of iron in bacterial infections, with special consideration of host-tubercule Bacillus interaction. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. 60: 1-30.

Kochan, Ivan, Neal R. Pellis and Carole A. Golden. 1971. Mechanism of tuberculostasis in mammalian serum. III. Neutralization of serum tuberculostasis by mycobactin. Infect. Immun. 3: 553-558. Konijn, A. M. and C. Hershko. 1977. Ferritin synthesis in inflammation.

- I. Pathogenesis of impaired iron release. Br. J. Haematol. 37: 7-16.
- Konopka, Krystyna, A. Bindereif and J. B. Neilands. 1982. Aerobactinmediated utilization of transferrin iron. Biochemistry 21: 6503-6508.
- Kornfeld, Stuart. 1968. The effects of structural modifications on the biologic activity of human transferrin. Biochemistry 7: 945-954.
- Laemmli, U. K. 1970. Cleavage of structural proteins during the assembly of the head of bacteriophage T4. Nature (London) 227: 680-685.

Lalonde, Richard G. and Bruçe E. Holbein. 1984. Role of iron in *Trypanosoma cruzi* infection in mice. J. Clin. Invest. 73: 470-476.

Lamb, Jamie E., Frank Ray, John H. Ward, James P. Kushner and Jerry Kaplan. 1983. Internalization and subcellular localization of transferrin and transferrin receptors in HeLa cells. J. Biol. Chem. 258: 8751-8758.

Landschulz, William, Irma Thesleff and Peter Ekblom. 1984. A lipophilic iron chelator can replace transferrin as a stimulator of cell , proliferation and differentiation. J. Cell Biol. 98: 596-601. Lane, R. S. 1972. Transferrin-reticulocyte binding: Evidence for the functional importance of transferrin conformation. Br. J. Haematol. 22: 309-317.

Lappin, Terence R. J., G. Elizabeth Elder, Sean H. McKibbin, Peter T. McNamee, Mary G. McGeown and John M. Bridges. 1985. The effect of transferrin saturation on the estimation of erythropoietin by the mouse spleen cell microassay. Exp. Hematol. 13: 1007-1013.

Larrick, James W. and Peter Cresswell. 1979. Transferrin receptors on human B and T lymphoblastoid cell lines. Biochim. Biophys. Acta 583: 483-490.

Larrick, James W. and Peter Cresswell. 1979a. Modulation of cell surface iron transferrin receptors by cellular density and state of activation. J. Supramol. Struc. 11: 579-586.

Lazarus, Alan H. and Malcolm G. Baines. 1985. Studies on the rechanism of specificity of human natural killer cells for tumor cells: orrelation between target cell transferrin receptor expression and competitive activity. Cell. Immunol. 96: 255-266.

Lazarus, Alan H. and Malcolm G. Baines. 1985a. A rapid and efficient microtechnique for the analysis of functional transferrin receptors on tumor cells. J. Immunol. Methods 79: 213-221.

211

Lederman, H. M., A. Cohen, J. W.W. Lee, M. H. Freedman and E. W. Gelfand. 1984. Deferoxamine: a reversible S-phase inhibitor of human lymphocyte proliferation. Blood: 64: 748-753.

Lee, G. R. 1983. The anemia of chronic disease. Semin. Hematol. 20: 61-. 80.

Lee, G. Richard, Sergio Nacht, John N. Lukens and G. E. Cartwright. 1968. Iron metabolism in copper-deficient swine. J. Clin. Invest. 47: 2058-2069.

Leibman, Adela and Philip Aisen. 1979. Distribution of iron between the binding sites of transferrin in serum: Methods and results in normal human subjects. Blood 53:1058-1065.

Lestas, A. N. 1976. The effect of pH upon human transferrin: Selective labelling of the two iron-binding sites. Br. J. Haematol. 32: 341-350.

Letendre, Elaine D. and Bruce E. Holbein. 1983. Turnover in the transferrin iron pool during the hypoferremic phase of experimental Neisseria meningitidis infection in mice. Infect. Immun. 39: 50-59.

Letendre, Elaine D. and Bruce E. Holbein. 1984. Mechanism of impaired iron release by the reticuloendothelial system during the hypoferremic phase of experimental *Neisseria meningitidis* infection in mice. Infect. Immun. 44: 320-325. Letendre, E. D. and B. E. Holbein. 1984a. Ceruloplasmin and regulation of transferrin iron during *Neisseria meningitidis* infection in mice. Infect. Immun. 45: 133-138.

Linder, Maria C., Ronald R. Bryant, Suzanne Lim, Laura E. Scott and Joan E. Moor. 1979. Ceruloplasmin elevation and synthesis in rats with transplantable tumors. Enzyme 24: 85-95.

Linder, Maria C., Joan R. Moor and Kristine Wright. 1981. Ceruloplasmin assays in diagnosis and treatment of human lung, breast, and gastrointestinal cancers. J. Natl. Cancer Inst. 67: 263-275.

Locke, Arthur E., R. Main and D. O. Rosbash. 1932. The copper and nonhemoglobinous iron contents of the blood serum in disease. J. Clin. Invest. 11: 527-542.

Louache, Fawzia, Ugo Testa, Piero Pelicci, Pierre Thomopoulos, Monique Titeux and Henri Rochant.º 1984. Regulation of transferrin receptors in human hematopoietic cell lines. J. Biol. Chem. 259: 11576-11582.

Louache, F., E. Pelosi, M. Titeux, C. Peschle and U. Testa. 1985. Molecular mechanisms regulating the synthesis of transferrin receptors and ferritin in human erythroleukemic cell lines. FEBS Lett. 183: 223-227.

13-2

213

Lowry, Oliver H., Nira J. Rosebrough, A. Lewis Farr and Rose J. Randall, 1951. Protein measurement with the Folin phenol reagent. J. Biol. Chem. 193: 265-275.

Lucero, Miguel A., Evelyne Schaeffer, Georges N. Cohen and Mario M. Zakin. 1986. The 5' region of the human transferrin gene: Structure and potential regulatory sites. Nucleic Acids Res. 14: 8692.

MacGillivray, Ross T. A., Enrique Mendez, Sudhir K. Sinha, Michael R. Sutton, Janet Lineback-Zins and Keith Brew. 1982. The complete amino acid sequence of human serum transferrin. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A. 79: 2504-2508.

 Madeillivray, Ross T. A., Enrique Mendez, Jaiprakash G. Shewale, Sudhir
 K. Sinha, Janet Lineback-Zins and Keith Brew. 1983. The primary structure of human serum transferrin. J. Biol. Chem. 258: 3543-3553.

Margerison, A. C. F. and J. R. Mann. 1985. Serum copper, serum ceruloplasmin, and erythrocyte sedimentation rate measurements in children with Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, and nonmalignant lymphadenopathy. Cancer 55: 1501-1506.

Markelonis, George J., Ralph A. Bradshaw, Tae H. Oh, Jeri L. Johnson and Owen J. Bates. 1982. Sciatin is a transferrin-like polypeptide. J. Neurochem. 39: 315-320. Martin, A. W., E. Huebers, H. Huebers, J. Webb and C.A. Finch. 1984. A mono-sited transferrin from a representative deuterostome: the ascidian Pyura stolonifera (subphylum Urochordata). Blood 64: 1047-1052.

Marx, J. J. M. 1984. Molecular Aspects of iron kinetAcs. Eur. J. Clin. Invest. 14: 408-410.

Masson, Luke and Bruce E. Holbein. 1985. Influence of nutrient limitation and low pH on serogroup B Neisseria meningitidis capsular polysaccharide levels: correlation with virulence for mice. Infect. Immun. 47: 465-471.

Mattia, Elena, Krishnamurty Rao, Daniel S. Shapiro, Howard H. Sussman and Richard D. Klausner, 1984. Biosynthetic regulation of the human transferrin receptor by desferrioxamine in K562 cells. J. Biol. Chem. 259: 2689-2592.

Maugh, Thomas H. II and Jean L. Marx. 1975. <u>Seeds of Destruction</u>. The science report on cancer research. Plenum Press, New York.

May, Peter M. and David R. Williams. 1980. The inorganic chemistry of iron metabolism. In: <u>Iron in Biochemistry and Medicine</u>, II. Jacobs, A. and M. Worwood, editors. Academic Press. New York.

May, W. Stratford, Steven Jacobs and Pedro Cuatrecasas. 1984. Association

of phorbol ester-induced hyperphosphorylation and reversible regulation of transferrin membrane receptors in HL60 cells. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A. 81: 2016-2020.

May, W. Stratford Jr. and Pedro Cuatrecasas. 1985. Transferrin receptor: Its biological significance. J. Membr. Biol. 88: 205-215.

May, W. Stratford, Naji Sahyoun, Steven Jacobs, Marlene Wolf and Pedro Cuatrecasas. 1985. Mechanism of phorbol diester-induced regulation of surface transferrin receptor involves the action of activated protein kinase C and an intact cytoskeleton. J. Biol. Chem. 260: 9419-9426.

Mazurier, J., W. Hu, J. Montreuil and G. Spik. 1987. Expression of human lactotransferrin receptors on phytohemagglutinin-stimulated human peripheral blood lymphocytes. Isolation of the receptors by antiligand-affinity chromatography. Eighth International Conference on Proteins of Iron Transport and Storage. May 10-14, 1987. Montebello, Quebec. Canada.

McClelland, Alan, Lukas C. Kuhn and Frank[®]H. Ruddle. 1984. The human transferrin receptor gene: Genomic organization, and the complete primary structure of the receptor deduced from a cDNA sequence. Cell: 39: 267-274.

Mercer, Donald W. and Thomas S. Talamo. 1985. Multiple markers of malig-

nancy in sera of patients with colorectal carcinoma: Preliminary clinical studies. Clin. Chem. 31/11: 1824-1828.

Messmer, Trudy O. 1973. Nature of the iron requirement for Chinese hamster V79 cells in tissue culture medium Exp. Cell Res. 77: 404-408.

Messmer, Trudy O. 1973a. A comparison of the interaction of Chinese hamster fibroblasts with human and bovine transferrins, and conalbumin (chick-egg transferrin). Biochim. Biophys. Acta 320: 663-670.

Mickelsen, Patricia A. and Frederick Sparling, 1981. Ability of Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Neisseria meningitidis⁴⁷ and commensal Neisseria species to obtain iron from transferrin and iron compounds. Infect. Immun. 33: 555-564.

Mickelsen, Patricia A., Eleanore Blackman and P. Frederick Sparling. 1982. Ability of Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Neisseria meningitidis, and commensal Neisseria species to obtain iron from lactoferrin. Infect. Immun. 35: 915-920.

Mietzner, Timothy A,, Geraldine H. Luginbuhl, Eric Sandstrom and Stephen A. Morse. 1984. Identification of an iron-regulated 37,000-dalton protein in the cell envelope of Neisseria gonorrhoeae. Infect. Immun. 45: 410-416. Mietzner, Timothy A., Robert C. Barnes, Yucynthia A. Jeanlouis, William M. Shafer and Stephen A. Morse. 1986. Distribution of an antigenically related iron-regulated protein among the Neisseria spp. Infect. Immun. 51: 60-68.

Miller, Aaron, Robert B. Chrodos, Charles P. Emerson and Joseph F. Ross. 1956. Studies of the anemia and iron metabolism in cancer. J. Clin. Invest. 35: 1248-1262.

Miskimins, W. Keith, Alan McClelland, Michael P. Roberts and Frank H. Ruddle. 1986. Cell proliferation and expression of the transferrin receptor gene: Promoter sequence homologies and protein interactions. J. Cell Biol. 103: 1781-1788.

Morgan, E.H. 1981. Transferrin, biochemistry, physiology and clinical significance. Mol. Aspects Med. 4: 1-123.

Neckers, Leonard M. 1984. Transferrin receptors regulate proliferation of normal and malignant B cells. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. 113: 62-68.

Neilands, J. B. 1981. Microbial iron compounds. Ann. Rev. Biochem. 50; 715-731.

Neilands, J. B. 1982. Microbial envelope proteins related to iron. Ann. Rev. Microbiol. 36: 285-309. Neilands, J. B. 1987. Parallels in the mode of 'regulation of high,

affinity iron assimilation in all living species. Eighth International Conference on Proteins of Iron Transport and -Storage. May 10-14, 1987. Montebello, Quebec. Canada.

Nettesheim, P., D. A. Creasia and T. J. Mitchell. 1975. Carcinogenic and cocarcinogenic effects of inhaled synthetic smog and ferric oxide particles. J. Natl. Cancer Inst. 55: 159-169.

Octave, Jean-Noel, Yves-Jacques Schneider, Robert R. Crichton and Andre Trouet. 1981. Transferrin uptake by cultured rat embryo fibroblasts. The influence of temperature and incubation time, subcellular distribution and short-term kinetic studies. Eur. J. Biochem. 115: 611-618.

Octave, Jean-Noel, Yves-Jacques Schneider, Robert R. Crichton and Andre Trouet. 1982. Transferrin protein and iron uptake by isolated rat erythroblasts. FEBS Lett. 137: 119-123.

Olden, Kenneth, J. Brian Parent and Sandra L. White. 1982. Carbohydrate moieties of glycoproteins. A re-evaluation of their function. Biochim. Biophys. Acta 650: 209-232.

Omary, M. Bishr, Ian S. Trowbridge and Jun Minowada: 1980. Human cellsurface glycoprotein with unusual properties. Nature (London) 286: 888-891. Omary, M. Bishr and Ian S. Trowbridge. 1981. Biosynthesis of the human transferrin receptor in cultured cells. J. Biol. Chem. 256: 12888-

12892.

Omary, M. Bishr and Ian S. Trowbridge. 1981a. Covalent binding of fatty acid to the transferrin receptor in cultured human cells. J. Biol. Chem. 256: 4715-4718.

Osaki, Shigemasa, Donald A. Johnson and Earl Frieden. 1966. The possible significance of the ferrous oxidase activity of ceruloplasmin in normal human serum. J. Biol. Chem. 241: 2746-2751.

Osborne, Thomas B. and George F. Campbell. 1900. The protein constituents of egg white. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 22: 422-450/

Pekarek, R. S., K. A. Bostian, P. J. Bartelloni, F. M. Calia and W. R.
 Beisel. 1969. The effects of *Francisella tularensis* infection on iron metabolism in man. Am. ^oJ. Med. Sci. 258: 14-25.

Pekarek, Robert S. and William R. Beisel. 1971. Characterization of the endogenous mediator(s) of serum zinc and iron depression during infection and other stresses. Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med. 138: 728-732.

Penhallow, Robert C., Anne Brown-Mason and Robert C. Woodworth. 1986. Comparative studies of ^Gthe binding and growth-supportive ability

×°a⊑‡

of mammalian transferrins in human cells. J. Cell. Physiol. 128:

Princiotto, J. V. and E. J. Zapolski. 1975. Difference between the two iron-binding sites of transferrin. Nature 255: 87-88.

Rao, K. K., D. Shapiro, E. Mattia, K. Bridges and R. Klausner. 1985 CEffects of alterations in cellular iron on biosynthesis of the transferrin receptor in K562 cells. Mol. Cell. Biol. 5: 595-600.

Ravin, Herbert A. 1961. An improved colorimetric enzymatic assay of ceruloplasmin. J. Lab. Clin. Med. 58: 161-168.

Reckhow, C. and C. A. Enns. 1987. Biosynthesis of the transferrin receptor in A431 cells. Eighth International Conference on Proteins of Iron Transport and Storage. May 10-14, 1987. Montebello, Quebec. Canada.

Redhead, Keith, Teresa Hill and Henrik Chart. 1987. Interaction of lactoferrin and transferrins with the outer membrane of *Bordetella* pertussis. J. Gen. Micro. 133: 891-898.

 \mathcal{C}

Rich, Ivan N., Gunter Sawatzki and Bernhard Kubanek. 1981. Specific enhancement of mouse CFU-E by mouse transferrin. Br. J. Haematol. 49: 567-573. Richmond, H. G. 1961. The toxic effects of iron-dextran complex on mam-

• malian cells, in tissue culture. Brit. J. Cancer 15: 594-606.

Robbins, Elliott, Jane Fant and William Norton. 1972. Intracellular ironbinding macromolecules in HeLa cells. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A. 69: 3708-3712.

Robertson, M. A., J. S. Harington and Evelyn Bradshaw. 1971. The cancer pattern in African gold miners. Br. J. Cancer 25: 395-402.

Roeser, H. P., G. R. Lee, S. Nacht and G. E. Cartwright. 1970. The role of ceruloplasmin in iron metabolism. J. Clin. Invest. 49:

Rogers, Henry J. 1967. Bacteriostatic effects of horse sera and serum fractions on *Clostridium welchii* type A, and the abolition of bacteriostasis by iron salts.' Immunology 12: 285-301.

Rosenberg, J. C. and B. F. Rush. 1966. An enzymatic-spectrophotometric determination of pruvic and lactic acid in blood. Clin.
Chem. 12: 299-307. As found in: <u>Methods in Microbiology</u> volume 6a.
1971. Enzymic methods for pyruvic and lactic acids. pp148-150.
Norris, J. R. and D. W. Ribbons, editors.

Rothenberger, Sylvia, Barry J. Iacopetta and Lukas C. Kuhn. 1987. Endocytosis of the transferrin receptor requires the cytoplasmic domain but not its phosphorylation site. Cell 49: 423-431.

Rouault, Tracey, Krishnamurthy Rao, Joe Harford, Elena Mattia and Richard D. Klausner. 1985. Hemin, chelatable iron, and the regulation of transferrin receptor biosynthesis. J. Biol. Chem. 260: 14862-14866.

Ruddon, Raymond W. 1981. <u>Cancer Biology</u>. Oxford University Press. New York, Oxford.

Rudland, Philip S., Helga Durbin, Dorothie Clingan and Luis Jimenez de Asua. 1977. Iron salts and transferrin are specifically required for cell division of cultured 3T6 cells. Biochem. Biophys. Res.

Rumke, P., D. Visser, H. G. Kwa and A. A. M. Hart. 1971. Radioimmunoassay of lactoferrin in blood plasma of breast cancer patients, lactating and normal women. Folia Med. Neerl. 14: 156-168.

Sarcione, Edward J., James R. Smalley, Mark J. Lema and Leon Stutzman. 1977. Increased ferritin synthesis and release by Hodgkin's Disease peripheral blood lymphocytes. Int. J. Cancer 20: 339-346,

Scatchard, G. 1949. The attractions of proteins for small molecules and ions. , Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 51: 660-672. Schade, Arthur L. and Leona Caroline. 1944. Raw hen egg white and the role of iron in growth inhibition of Shigella dysenteriae, Staphylococcus aureus, Escherichia coli and Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Science 100: 14-15.

Schade, Arthur L. and Leona Caroline. 1946. An iron-binding component in human blood plasma. Science 104: 340-341.

Schade, Stanley G. 1976. Iron homeostasis in plasmacytoma-bearing mice. Cancer Res. 36: 375-378.

Schneider, Claudio, Robert Sutherland, Roland Newman and Melvyn Greaves.

1982. 'Structural features of the cell surface receptor for transferrin that is recognized by the monoclonal antibody OKT9. J. Biol. Chem. 257: 8516-8522.

Schneider, C., M.J. Owen, D. Banville and J.G. Williams. 1984. Primary structure of human transferrin receptor deduced from the mRNA sequence. Nature (London) 311: 675-678.

Seligman, Paul A., Rhoda B. Schleicher and Robert H. Allen. 1979. Isolation and characterization of the transferrin receptor from human placenta. J. Biol. Chem. 254: 9943-9946.

Shah, Ila, Ta-Hsu Chou, Efstathios Tapazoglou and David Kessel. 1984. Role of sialyltransferase in hypercupraemia of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Scand. J. Haematol. 32: 332-334.

Shindelman, Jeffrey E., Ann E. Ortmeyer and Howard H. Sussman. 1981. Demonstration of the transferrin receptor in human breast cancer tissue. Potential marker for identifying dividing cells. Int. J. Cancer 27: 329-334.

Simonson, 'C., D. Brener and I. W. DeVoe. 1982. Expression of a highaffinity mechanism for acquisition of transferring iron by Naisseria meningitidis. Infect. Immun. 36: 107-113.

Sirivech, Somjai, Earl Frieden and Shigemasa Ošaki. 1974 The release of iron from horse spleen ferritin by reduced flavins. Biochem. J. 143: 311-315.

Skinner, Michael K. and Michael D. Griswold. 1980. Sertoli cells synthesize and secrete transferrin-like protein. J. Biol. Chem. 255: 9523-9525.

Smit, S., M. I. E. Huijskes-Heins and B. Leijnse. 1982. Iron content of some tissue culture cells. Cell Biol. Int. Rep. 6: 741-744.

Soltys, Henry D. and Jerome I. Brody. 1970. Synthesis of transferrin by human peripheral blood lymphocytes. J. Lab. Clin. Med. 75: 250-257.

225

Spik, G., B. Bayard, B. Fournet, G. Strecker, S. Bouquelet and J.

Montreuil. 1975. Studies on glycoconjugates. LXIV. Complete structure of two carbohydrate units of human serotransferrin. FEBS Lett. 50: 296-299.

Stearne, Peter A., Geoffrey A. Pietersz and James W. Goding. 1985. cDNA cloning of the murine transferrin receptor: Sequence of transmembrane and adjacent regions. J. Immunol. 134: 3474-3479.

Stein, Barry S. and Howard H. Sussman. 1983. Peptide mapping of the human transferrin receptor in normal and transformed cells. J. Biol. Chem. 258: 2668-2673.

Stein, Daniel C., Lin E. Silver, Virginia L. Clark and Frank E. Young.
1983. Construction and characterization of a new shuttle vector,
pLES2, capable of functioning in *Escherichia coli* and *Neisseria*gonorrhoeze. Gene 25: 241-247.

Summers, M. R., A. Jacobs, D. Tudway, P. Perera and C. Ricketts. 1979. Studies on desferrioxamine and ferrioxamine metabolism in normal and iron-loaded subjects. Br. J. Haematol. 42: 547-555.

Sutherland, Robert, Domenico Delia, Claudio Schneider, Roland Newman, John Kemshead and Melvyn Greaves. 1981. Ubiquitous cell-surface glycoprotein on tumor cells is proliferation-associated receptor for transferrin. Proc. Natl. Acad Sci. U. S. A. 78: 4515-4519. Takahashi, Kiyoshi and Mehdi Tavassoli. 1982. Biphasic uptake of irontransferrin complex by L1210 murine leukemia cells and rat reticulocytes. Biochim. Biophys. Acta 685: 6-12.

Tan, A. T. and Robert C. Woodworth. 1969. Ultraviolet difference spectral studies of conalbumin complexes with transition metal ions. Biochemistry 8: 3711-3716.

Tidmarsh, George F. and Leon T. Rosenberg. 1981. Acquisition of iron from transferrin by Salmonella paratyphi B. Curr. Microbiol. 6: 217-220.

Titeux, Monique, Ugo Testa, Fawzia Louache, Pierre Thomopoulos, Henri Rochant and Jeanine Breton-Gorius. 1984. The role of iron in the growth of human leukemic cell lines. J. Cell Physiol. 121: 251-256.

Tormey, D. C., R. C. Imrie and G. C. Mueller. 1972. Identification of transferrin as a lymphocyte growth promotor in human serum. Exp. Cell Res. 74: 163-169.

Tormey, D. C. and G. C. Mueller. 1972. Biological effects of transferrin on human lymphocytes in vitro. Exp. Cell Res. 74: 220-226.

Trowbridge, Ian S. and Derrick L. Domingo. 1981. Anti-transferrin receptor monoclonal antibody and toxin-antibody conjugates affect growth of human tumour cells. Nature (London) 294: 171-173. Trowbridge, Ian S. and M. Bishr Omary. 1981. Human cell surface glycoprotein related to cell proliferation is the receptor for transferrin. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A. 78: 3039-3043.

Trowbridge, Ian S., Jayne Lesley and Roberta Schulte. 1982. Murine cell surface transferrin receptor: Studies with an anti-receptor monoclonal antibody. J. Cell. Physiol. 112: 403-410.

Trowbridge, Ian S., Roland A. Newman, Derrick L. Domingo and Carol Sauvage. 1984. Transferrin receptors: Structure and function. Biochem. Pharmacol. 33: 925-932.

Tsavaler, Larisa, Barry S. Stein and Howard H. Suesman. 1986. Demonstration of the specific binding of bovine transferrin to the human transferrin receptor in K562 cells: Evidence for interspecies transferrin internalization. J. Cell. Physiol. 128: 1-8.

Tycko, Benjamin and Frederick R. Maxfield. 1982. Rapid acidification of endocytic vesicles containing alpha₂-macroglobulin. Cell 28: 643-651.

Urushizaki, Yoichi, Yutaka Kohgo, Yoshiro Niitzu and Ichiro Urushizaki. 1984. Binding specificity of transferrin receptors on cultured tumor cells. In: <u>Electrophoresis</u> '83. Advanced Methods Biochemical and Clinical Applications. Proceedings of the International Con-

ference on Electrophoresis. Tokyo, Japan May 9-12, 1983, Hirai, H.,

editor. Walter de Gruyter. Berlin, New York.

Uzan, Georges, Monique Frain, Insoo Park, Claude Besmond, Gerard Maessen, Jose Sala Trepat, Mario M. Zakin and Axel Kahn. 1984. Molecular cloning and sequence analysis of cDNA for human transferrin. Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 119: 273-281.

Van Bockxmeer, Francesco M. and E. H. Morgan. 1977. Identification of transferrin receptors in reticulocytes. Biochim. Biophys. Acta 468: 437-450.

Van der Heul, C., M. J. Kroos, W. L. Van Noort and H. G. Van Eijk. 1984. No functional difference of the two iron-binding sites of human transferrin in vitro and in vivo. Protides of the biological fluids. 31: 73-76. Peeters, H., editor. Pergamon Press.

Van de Rijn, M., A. H. M. Geurts Van Kessel, V. Kroezen, A. J. Van Agthoven, K. Verstijnen, C. Terhorst and J. Hilgers. 1983. Localization of a gene controlling the expression of the human transferrin receptor to the region ql2 qter of chromosome

3. Cytogenet. Cell Genet. 36: 525-531.

Van Driel, Ian R., Peter A. Stearne, Boris Grego, Richard J. Simpson and James W. Goding. 1984. The receptor for transferrin on murine myeloma cells: One-step purification based on its physiology, and partial amino acid sequence. J. Immunol. 133: 3220-3224.

229

Van Driel, Ian R, and James W. Goding. 1985. Heterogeneous glycosyation of murine transferrin receptor subúnits. Eur. J. Biochem. 149: 543-548.

Van Renswoude, Jos, Kenneth R. Bridges, Joe B. Harford and Richard D. Klausner. 1982. Receptor-mediated endocytosis of transferrin and

the uptake of Fe in K562 cells: Identification of a nonlysosomal acidic compartment. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 79: 61866190.

Van Snick, Jacques, L., Pierre L. Masson and Joseph. F. Heremans. 1974. The involvement of lactoferrin in the hyposideremia of acute inflammation. J. Exp. Med. 140: 1068-1084.

Vodinelich, L., R. Sutherland, C. Schneider, R. Newman and M. Greaves. 1983. Receptor for transferrin may be a "target" structure for natural killer cells. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80: 835-839.

Wada, H. Garrett, Philip E. Hass and Howard H. Sussman. 1979. Transferrin réceptor in human placental brush border membranes. J. Biol. Chem. 254: 12629-12635.

Ward, John H., James P. Kushner and Jerry Kaplan. 1982. Transferrin receptors of human fibroblasts. Analysis of receptor properties and regulation. Biochem J. 208: 19-26.

Ward, John H., Ina Jordan, James P. Kushner and Jerry Kaplan. 1984.

Heme regulation of HeLa cell transferrin receptor number. J. Biol. Chem. 259: 13235-13240.

.

Ward, J.H. 1987. The structure, function, and regulation of transferrin receptors. Invest. Radiol. 22: 74-83.

Warner, P. J., P. H. Williams, A. Bindereif and J. B. Neilands. 1981. ColV plasmid-specified aerobactin synthesis by invasive strains of *Escherichia coli*. Infect. Immun. 33: 540-545.

Weinberg, Eugene D./ 1981. Iron and neoplasia. Biol. Trace Elem. Res. 3: 55-80.

Weinberg, Eugene D. 1983. Iron in neoplastic disease. Nutrition and Cancer 4: 223-233.

Weinberg, Eugene D. 1984. Iron withholding: A defense against infection and neoplasia. Physiol. Revs. 64: 65-102.

Weinberg, Eugene D. 1986. Iron, infection, and neoplasia. Clin. Physiol. Biochem. 4: 50-60.

Weinberg, J. Brice and John B. Hibbs Jr. 1977. Endocytosis of red blood

cells or haemoglobin by activated macrophages inhibits their tumoricidal effect. Nature (London) 269: 245-247,

- West, Susan E. H. and P. Frederick Sparling. 1985. Response of Neisseria gonorrhoeae to iron limitation: Alterations in expression of membrane proteins without apparent siderophore production. Infect. Immun. 47: 388-394.
- White, G. P., M. Worwood, D. H. Parry and A. Jacobs. 1974. Ferritin synthesis in normal and leukaemic leukocytes. Nature (London) 250: 584-586.

Wilczynska, A. and H. M. Schulman. 1980. Friend erythroleukemia cell membrane transferrin receptors. Can. J. Biochem. 58: 935-940.

Wilczynska, Ania, Premysl Ponka and Herbert M. Schulman. 1984.

Transferrin receptors and iron utilization in DMSO-inducible and -uninducible Friend erythroleukemia cells. Exp. Cell Res. 154: 561-566.

Williams, J. 1968. A comparison of glycopeptides from the ovotransferrin - and serum transferrin of the hen. Biochem. J. 108: 57-67.

- Williams, J. 1979. The distribution of iron in human transferrin under physiological conditions. Abstract C, Fourth International Conference on Proteins of Iron Metabolism, Davos, Switzerland, April 17-21, 1979.

Williams, John. 1982. The evolution of transferrin. Trends. Biochem. Sci. 7: 394-397.

Williams, John, Sheila A. Grace and Jennifer M. Williams. 1982. Evolutionary significance of the renal excretion of transferrin half-molecule fragments. Biochem. J. 201: 417-419.

Williams, Peter H. 1979. Novel iron uptake system specified by ColV plasmids: An important component in the virulence of invasive strains of *Escherichia coli*. Infect. Immun. 26: 925-932.

Willson, R. L. 1977. Iron, zinc, free radicals and oxygen in tissue disorders and cancer control. In: CIBA Found. Symp., NS 51: <u>Iron metabolism</u> pp 331-354. Eisevier North-Holland, Amsterdam.

Wrigglesworth, J. M. and H. Baum. 1980. The biochemical functions of iron. In: <u>Iron in Biochemistry and Medicine, II</u>. pp 29-86. Jacobs, A. and M. Worwood, editors. Academic Press, New York.

Yancey, Robert J. and Richard A. Finkelstein. 1981. Siderophore production by pathogenic *Neisseria* spp. Infect. Immun. 32: 600-608.

Yang, Funmei, J. B. Lum, John R. McGill, Charleen M. Moore, Susan L.

Naylor, Peter H. Van Bragt, W. David Baldwin and Barbara H. Bowman. 1984. Human transferrin: cDNA characterization and chromosomal localization. Proc. Natl. Acad. U.S.A. 81; 2752-... 234

Yeh, Chang-Jing G., Colin G. Taylor and W. Page Faulk. 1984. Transferrin binding by peripheral blood mononuclear cells in human lymphomas, myelomas and leukemias. Vox Sang. 46: 217-223.

Zahringer, J., B. S. Baliga and H. N. Munro. 1976. Novel mechanism for translational control in regulation of ferritin synthesis by iron. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 73: 857-861.

Zapolski, E. J. and J. V. Princiotto. 1976. Failure of rabbit reticulocytes to incorporate conalbumin or lactoferrin iron. Biochim. Biophys. Acta 421: 80-86.

Zucker, Stanley. 1985. Anemia in cancer. Cancer Invest. 3: 249-260.

Becton Pickinson ⁵⁹Fe Radioassay Kit

The kit contains an acidic ⁵⁹Fe reaction solution, sodium carbonate solution, resin tablets and UIBC reference serum. Serum samples are set up in duplicate tubes labelled TIBC and UIBC; 200 ul of serum are added to each tube. Control total and blank tubes are included to which 200 ul of water is UIBC reference tubes are also included and 200 ul of added. reference serum is added to them. Initially 500 ul ⁵⁹Fe reaction solution is added to all TIBC tubes. As this is an acidic solution any unlabelled Fe bound to serum Tf will be removed. After 10 min, 500 ul of sodium car-'bonate solution is added to all TIBC tubes, then UIBC tubes then all total and blank tubes. Because of the excess of radiolabelled Fe present in the TIBC tubes, all available Fe binding sites will be occupied with labelled Subsequently, 500 ul of ⁵⁹Fe reaction solution is added to all UIBC. Fe. blank and total count tubes. Radiolabelled Fe will then bind to all available Fe sites on the serum Tf in the UIBC tubes. After 10 min, resin tablets are added to TIBC and UIBC tubes; this removes any unbound Fe. Tubes are incubated, vortexed and re-incubated then centrifuged in an Eppendorf centrifuge for 10 min. Supernatants are counted for one min in a gamma counter. Calculation of Fe binding capacity is based on the known concentration of exogenous radioactive Fe and the dilution factor, The UIBC reference serum is used to standardize the results. The assigned UIBC reference value supplied with the kit and the counts obtained from the UIBC reference tubes are used to obtain a calculation constant K for each assay. The constant K is used to calculate the UIBC and TIBC for each serum

APPENDIX I
sample. Serum Fe is the difference between TIBC and UIBC. The percent Fe saturation of Tf is obtained by serum Fe/TIBC X 100%.

}.

APPENDIX II

The API ZYM System

The API ZYM system is a semi-quantitative micromethod for detection of en- 。 zyme activities. The system consists of a series of microcupules containing chromogenic enzyme substrates. The addition of the aqueous sample starts the reactions. The EL4-1 cell suspensions were adjusted to contain $7.6 \times 10^{6} \text{ cells ml}^{-1}$ With a pasteur pipette, 2 drops of cell suspension were added to each cupular. The strips were incubated for 4 h at 37° C. After incubation, one drop of reagent A and one drop of reagent B were added to each cupule and the strip was exposed to light. A colour reaction of 0-5 was assigned by comparison to the colour chart provided. In each reaction, the enzyme substrate is bound to beta-naphthol or betamaphthylamine. The enzyme, if present, reacts with substrate to form the released product and beta naphthol or beta-naphthylamine. These 2-latter compounds react with the detector reagents to produce a colour.

Numb	er	Enzyme	Substrate	Colour
		• • • • •	ē	
1-	i	alkaline phosphatase	2-naphthylphosphate	violet
2	4	esterase (C4)	2-naphthylbutyrate	violet
. [3	·	esterase lipase (C8)	2-naphthylcaprylate	violet
4	1	lipase (C14)	2-paphthylmyristate	violet
5	, ,	leucine aminopeptidase	L-leucyl-2-	orange

naphthylamide

				•	
,		•	•		•
-		1	-	• 、	•
,				• -	
1			•	- *	,
•			\checkmark	٥	•
		ŗ		i 1	ţ
		U	valine aminopeptidase	L-Valy1-2-	orange
		•	ې	naphthylamide	.
		7	cystine aminopeptidase	L-cystyl-2-	orange
	-			naphthylamide	8
		8	trypsin	N-benzoyl-DL-	orange
			ت الع	arginine-2-	٠
		I	· · ·	naphthylamide	4
	1	9	chymotrypsin	N-glutaryl-	ðrange '
	•			phenvlalanine .	
			\sim	2-naphthylamino	
		10			
'n		_10	aelo phosphatase	2-naphtnyl poosphate	violet
		11	phosphoamidase	Naphthyl AS-Bl-	blue
	•	،۲		phosphodiamide	- -
	ь -	12	alpha-galactosidase	_6-Br-2-naphthyl-alpha	violet 🤨
			,	D-galactopyranoside	`
•		13,	beta-galactosidase	2-naphthyl-beta-D-	violet
ø	,		1	galactopyranoside	*
•	1	-14	beta-glucuronidase	Naphthyl-AS-Bl-beta	-blue
			· · · ·	D-glucuroni de	
	4	15	alpha-aluanaidara	2 perhapsilo	wielet
		13	alpha-glucosidase	2-naphtny172-0-	vioiec
-			•	glucopyranoside	
		16	beta-glucosidase	6-bromo-2-naphthol-	violet
•			- 1	beta-D-gluco-	۰ •
•	_ .			pyranoside	
•	₩ ₩	17	N-acetyl-beta-glucosaminidase	1-naphthyl-N-acetyl-	brown*
a		۵	, , ,	beta-D-glucosaminide	۰ _ ۰
9	•		• •		۔ قو

alpha-mannosidase

19 alpha-fucosidase

Tris (Hydroxymethyl) aminomethane Hydrochloric acid (37%) . Laurylsulfate (sodium dodecyl sulfate Distilled water

6-bromo-2-naphthyl-2- violet • 2

D-mannopyranoside 2-naphthyl-alpha-L. violet fucopyranoside

Reagent A 250 ·110 ml 100 g 1000 ml q.s.

Réagent B

18

Fast Blue BB 3.5 g 2-methoxyethanol 1000 ml q.s.

APPENDIX III

List of Abbreviations

Fe Tf TMPD RE Lf

Cp

.IL-1 F.B.S.

PBS TIBC

UIBC

SDS - PAGE

МНВ

MHA

EDDA *-

iron

transferrin tetramethyl-p-phenylenediamine

reticuloendothelial

lactoferrin

ceruloplasmin

leucocyte endogenous mediator

interleukin-1

fetal'bovine serum

phosphate buffered saline

total iron binding capacity

bovine serum albumin

sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel

; ·

electrophoresis

Mueller-Hinton Broth

Mueller-Hinton Agar

ethylene-diamine-di-ortho-hydroxyphenyl

acetic acid

MHB-EDDA

Mueller-Hinton Broth containing EDDA